

### Solutions to Exercise 3A Foundation questions

$$\begin{aligned} 1a \quad & (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^5 \\ &= (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^5 \\ &= \operatorname{cis} 5\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1b \quad & (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^{-3} \\ &= (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^{-3} \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(-3\theta) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1c \quad & (\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta)^4 \\ &= (\operatorname{cis} 2\theta)^4 \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(4 \times 2\theta) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} 8\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1d \quad & \cos \theta - i \sin \theta \\ &= \cos(-\theta) + i \sin(-\theta) \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(-\theta) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1e \quad & (\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)^{-7} \\ &= (\operatorname{cis}(-\theta))^{-7} \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(-7 \times -\theta) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} 7\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1f \quad & (\cos 3\theta - i \sin 3\theta)^2 \\ &= (\operatorname{cis}(-3\theta))^2 \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(2 \times -3\theta) \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(-6\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

2a

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^6 (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^{-3}}{(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)^4} \\
 &= \frac{(\text{cis } \theta)^6 (\text{cis } \theta)^{-3}}{(\text{cis }(-\theta))^4} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis } 6\theta \times \text{cis }(-3\theta)}{\text{cis }(-4\theta)} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis}(6\theta - 3\theta)}{\text{cis }(-4\theta)} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis } 3\theta}{\text{cis }(-4\theta)} \\
 &= \text{cis}(3\theta - (-4\theta)) \\
 &= \text{cis } 7\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

2b

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{(\cos 3\theta + i \sin 3\theta)^5 (\cos 2\theta - i \sin 2\theta)^{-4}}{(\cos 4\theta - i \sin 4\theta)^{-7}} \\
 &= \frac{(\text{cis } 3\theta)^5 (\text{cis }(-2\theta))^{-4}}{(\text{cis }(-4\theta))^{-7}} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis } 15\theta \times \text{cis } 8\theta}{\text{cis } 28\theta} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis}(15\theta + 8\theta)}{\text{cis } 28\theta} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis } 23\theta}{\text{cis } 28\theta} \\
 &= \text{cis}(23\theta - 28\theta) \\
 &= \text{cis }(-5\theta)
 \end{aligned}$$

3a

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4} \right)^4 \\
 &= \left( \text{cis } \frac{\pi}{4} \right)^4 \\
 &= \text{cis} \left( 4 \times \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= \text{cis } \pi \\
 &= \cos \pi + i \sin \pi \\
 &= -1 + 0i \\
 &= -1
 \end{aligned}$$

## Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

3b

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \right)^3 \\ &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{2} \right)^3 \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( 3 \times \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{3\pi}{2} \\ &= \cos \frac{3\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} \\ &= 0 - 1i \\ &= -i \end{aligned}$$

3c

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{6} \right)^5 \\ &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{6} \right)^5 \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( 5 \times \frac{\pi}{6} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6} \\ &= \cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6} \\ &= -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \end{aligned}$$

3d

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} \right)^{-2} \\ &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} \right)^{-2} \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( -2 \times \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{-4\pi}{3} \right) \\ &= \cos \frac{4\pi}{3} - i \sin \frac{4\pi}{3} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

3e

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \cos \frac{3\pi}{8} - i \sin \frac{3\pi}{8} \right)^{-6} \\
 &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \right)^{-6} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis} \left( -6 \times \frac{-3\pi}{8} \right) \\
 &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{9\pi}{4} \\
 &= \cos \frac{9\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{9\pi}{4} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i
 \end{aligned}$$

3f

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \cos \frac{5\pi}{12} - i \sin \frac{5\pi}{12} \right)^4 \\
 &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5\pi}{12} \right) \right)^4 \\
 &= \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= \cos \frac{5\pi}{3} - i \sin \frac{5\pi}{3} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i
 \end{aligned}$$

4a  $1 + i$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{1} \right) \right) \\
 &= \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

4b  $(1 + i)^{17}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{4} \right)^{17} \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^{17} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \times 17 \right) \\
 &= 256\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{17\pi}{4} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 256\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{4} \\
 &= 256\sqrt{2} \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 256\sqrt{2} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \\
 &= 256 + 256i
 \end{aligned}$$

5a  $z = 1 + i\sqrt{3}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sqrt{1^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} \right) \\
 &= 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

5b  $z^{11}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3} \right)^{11} \\
 &= 2^{11} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{3} \times 11 \right) \\
 &= 2048 \operatorname{cis} \frac{11\pi}{3} \\
 &= 2048 \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{3} \\
 &= 2048 \left( \cos \frac{5\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 2048 \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) \\
 &= 1024 - 1024\sqrt{3}i
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

6a  $z = -\sqrt{3} + i$

$$\begin{aligned} |z| &= \sqrt{(-\sqrt{3})^2 + 1^2} \\ &= \sqrt{3 + 1} \\ &= \sqrt{4} \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Arg}(z) &= \pi - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ &= \pi - \frac{\pi}{6} \\ &= \frac{5\pi}{6} \end{aligned}$$

6b  $z^7 + 64z$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left(2\text{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)^7 + 64\left(2\text{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6}\right) \\ &= 2^7 \text{cis} \left(\frac{5\pi}{6} \times 7\right) + 128 \text{cis} \left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) \\ &= 128 \text{cis} \frac{35\pi}{6} + 128 \text{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6} \\ &= 128 \left( \text{cis} \frac{35\pi}{6} + \text{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \\ &= 128 \left( \cos \frac{35\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{35\pi}{6} + \cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \\ &= 128 \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

7a  $\sqrt{3} - i$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sqrt{(\sqrt{3})^2 + 1^2} \text{cis} \left( \tan^{-1} \left( -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \right) \right) \\ &= 2 \text{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{6} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 7b \quad & (\sqrt{3} - i)^7 \\
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{6} \right) \right)^7 \\
 &= 2^7 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{6} \times 7 \right) \\
 &= 128 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{7\pi}{6} \right) \\
 &= 128 \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 7c \quad & (\sqrt{3} - i)^7 \\
 &= 128 \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6} \\
 &= 128 \left( \cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \\
 &= 128 \left( -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \right) \\
 &= -64\sqrt{3} + 64i
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 8a \quad & (-1 - i\sqrt{3}) \\
 &= \sqrt{1^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\pi + \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} \right) \\
 &= 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 8b \quad & (-1 - i\sqrt{3})^5 \\
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \right)^5 \\
 &= 2^5 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \times 5 \right) \\
 &= 32 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{10\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 32 \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 8c \quad & (-1 - i\sqrt{3})^5 \\
 &= 32 \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} \\
 &= 32 \left( \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 32 \left( -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2} \right) \\
 &= -16 + 16i\sqrt{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 9a \quad & \sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2} \\
 &= \sqrt{(\sqrt{2})^2 + (-\sqrt{2})^2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \tan^{-1} \left( -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \right) \\
 &= \sqrt{2+2} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 9b \quad & z^{22} \\
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right)^{22} \\
 &= 2^{22} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \times 22 \right) \\
 &= 2^{22} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{11\pi}{2} \right) \\
 &= 2^{22} \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{2} \\
 &= 2^{22}i
 \end{aligned}$$



### Solutions to Exercise 3A Development questions

10a  $(1 + i)^{10}$  (1<sup>st</sup> quadrant)

$$= \left( \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right)^{10}$$

$$= (\sqrt{2})^{10} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \times 10 \right)$$

$$= 2^5 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$= 2^5 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5\pi}{2} - 2\pi \right)$$

$$= 2^5 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$= 2^5 i$$

which is purely imaginary

10b  $(1 - i\sqrt{3})^9$  (4<sup>th</sup> quadrant)

$$= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{3} \right) \right)^9$$

$$= 2^9 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{3} \times 9 \right)$$

$$= 2^9 \operatorname{cis}(-3\pi)$$

$$= 2^9 \operatorname{cis}(-\pi)$$

$$= -2^9$$

which is real

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10c  $(-1 + i)^4$  (2<sup>nd</sup> quadrant)

$$= \left( \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{3\pi}{4} \right) \right)^4$$

$$= (\sqrt{2})^4 \operatorname{cis}(3\pi)$$

$$= 2^2 \operatorname{cis}(\pi)$$

$$= 4 \operatorname{cis}(\pi)$$

$$= -4$$

Hence  $-1 + i$  is a fourth root of  $-4$ .

10d  $(-\sqrt{3} - i)^6$  (3<sup>rd</sup> quadrant)

$$= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \right)^6$$

$$= 2^6 \operatorname{cis}(-5\pi)$$

$$= 2^6 \operatorname{cis}(-\pi)$$

$$= -2^6$$

$$= -64$$

Hence  $-\sqrt{3} - i$  is a sixth root of  $-64$ .

11 If  $k$  is a multiple of 4 then  $k = 4n$  where  $n$  is an integer. Thus,

$$(-1 + i)^k$$

$$= (-1 + i)^{4n} \text{ (2<sup>nd</sup> quadrant)}$$

$$= \left( \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{3\pi}{4} \right) \right)^{4n}$$

$$= \left( (\sqrt{2})^4 \operatorname{cis}(3\pi) \right)^n$$

$$= (-2^2)^n$$

$$= (-4)^n$$

which is real as required

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12a i  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^m$  (1<sup>st</sup> quadrant)

$$= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{6} \right) \right)^m$$

$$= 2^m \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{m\pi}{6} \right)$$

which is real when  $\frac{m\pi}{6}$  is a multiple of  $\pi$ . The lowest positive integer for which this is true is when  $m = 6$ .

12a ii  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^m$

$$= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{6} \right) \right)^m$$

$$= 2^m \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{m\pi}{6} \right)$$

which is imaginary when  $\frac{m\pi}{6}$  is of the form  $n\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $n$  is an integer. The lowest positive integer for which this is true is when  $m = 3$ .

12b i  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^6$

$$= 2^6 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{6\pi}{6} \right)$$

$$= -2^6$$

$$= -64$$

12b ii  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^3$

$$= 2^3 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{3\pi}{6} \right)$$

$$= 2^3 i$$

$$= 8i$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 13a \quad & (1 + i)^n + (1 - i)^n \text{ (1<sup>st</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> quadrants)} \\
 &= \left(\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right)^n + \left(\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right)^n \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^n \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) + (\sqrt{2})^n \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^n \left[\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)\right] \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^n \left[\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) - i \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)\right] \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^n \left(2 \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)\right) \\
 &= 2(\sqrt{2})^n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

which is real

$$13b \quad 2(\sqrt{2})^n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) = 0$$

This expression will be 0 when,

$$\frac{n\pi}{4} = 2m\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ (where } m \text{ is an integer)}$$

This gives,

$$n = 8m \pm 2$$

Since  $n$  is a positive integer,  $n = 2, 6, 10, 14, 18, \dots$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 14 \quad & (-\sqrt{3} + i)^n - (-\sqrt{3} - i)^n \text{ (2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> quadrants)} \\
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \right)^n - \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \right)^n \\
 &= 2^n \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - 2^n \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \\
 &= 2^n \left[ \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^n \left[ \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^n \left[ \cos \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - \left( \cos \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^n \left[ \cos \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) - \cos \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^n \left[ 2i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^{n+1} i \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) \\
 &= 2^{n+1} \sin \left( \frac{5n\pi}{6} \right) i
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 15a \quad & (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} + (1 - \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} \quad (1^{\text{st}} \text{ and } 4^{\text{th}} \text{ quadrants}) \\
 &= \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{3} \right) \right)^{2n} + \left( 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{3} \right) \right)^{2n} \\
 &= 2^{2n} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) + 2^{2n} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 2^{2n} \left[ \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) + \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^{2n} \left[ \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) + \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) - i \sin \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^{2n} \left[ 2 \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \right] \\
 &= 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

If  $n$  is divisible by 3 then  $n = 3m$  where  $m$  is an integer. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} + (1 - \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} \\
 &= 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \frac{2(3m)\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 2^{2n+1} \cos(2\pi m) \\
 &= 2^{2n+1}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$15b \quad (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} + (1 - \sqrt{3}i)^{2n} = 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \text{ from part a.}$$

Since  $n$  is not divisible by 3,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right) \\
 &= 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \pm \frac{2\pi}{3} \right), 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \pm \frac{4\pi}{3} \right), 2^{2n+1} \cos \left( \pm \frac{8\pi}{3} \right) \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that the terms above will always be in the first and third quadrants, since as  $n$  increases, we always just add an extra  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  and exclude the origin. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2^{2n+1} \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right) \\
 &= -2^{2n}
 \end{aligned}$$



16

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta - i \sin 2\theta} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{1 + \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta + i \sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta - i \sin 2\theta} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{\cos^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta + i \sin 2\theta}{\cos^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta - i \sin 2\theta} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{2 \cos^2 \theta + i \sin 2\theta}{2 \cos^2 \theta - i \sin 2\theta} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{2 \cos^2 \theta + 2i \cos \theta \sin \theta}{2 \cos^2 \theta - 2i \cos \theta \sin \theta} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{2 \cos \theta (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)}{2 \cos \theta (\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)}{(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)} \right)^n \\
 &= \left( \frac{\text{cis}(\theta)}{\text{cis}(-\theta)} \right)^n \\
 &= (\text{cis}(2\theta))^n \\
 &= \text{cis}(2n\theta)
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 17 \quad & (1 + \cos \alpha + i \sin \alpha)^k + (1 + \cos \alpha - i \sin \alpha)^k \\
 &= \left(1 + \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - \sin^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + i \sin \alpha\right)^k + \left(1 + \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - \sin^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - i \sin \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(\cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + 1 - \sin^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + i \sin \alpha\right)^k + \left(\cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + 1 - \sin^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - i \sin \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(\cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + i \sin \alpha\right)^k + \left(\cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - i \sin \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + i \sin \alpha\right)^k + \left(2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - i \sin \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha + 2i \sin \frac{1}{2} \alpha \cos \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k + \left(2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2} \alpha - 2i \sin \frac{1}{2} \alpha \cos \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left(\cos \frac{1}{2} \alpha + i \sin \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k + \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left(\cos \frac{1}{2} \alpha - i \sin \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k + \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left(\operatorname{cis} \left(-\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left[\left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)^k + \left(\operatorname{cis} \left(-\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k\right] \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left[\operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) + \operatorname{cis} \left(-\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right)\right] \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left[\cos \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) + i \sin \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) + \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) - i \sin \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right)\right] \\
 &= \left(2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)\right)^k \left[2 \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right)\right] \\
 &= 2^{k+1} \cos^k \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right) \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) \\
 &= 2^{k+1} \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} k \alpha\right) \cos^k \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3A Enrichment questions

18a  $1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{2n-1}$

$$= \frac{z^{2n} - 1}{z - 1} \text{ (Geometric sum noting } z \neq 1, \text{ by definition)}$$

$$= \frac{\text{cis } 2\pi - 1}{z - 1} \text{ (de Moivre } \text{cis}^n \theta = \cos(n\theta))$$

$$= \frac{1 - 1}{z - 1}$$

$$= 0$$

Alternatively,

$$1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{2n-1}$$

$$= 1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{n-1} + z^n + z^{n+1} + z^{n+2} + \dots + z^{2n-1}$$

$$= (1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{n-1}) + z^n(1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{n-1})$$

$$= (1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{n-1})(1 + z^n)$$

But,

$$(1 + z^n)$$

$$= 1 + \left(\text{cis} \frac{\pi}{n}\right)^n$$

$$= 1 + \text{cis } \pi \text{ (By de Moivre)}$$

$$= 1 - 1$$

$$= 0$$

Hence,

$$1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{2n-1}$$

$$= (1 + z + z^2 + \dots + z^{n-1}) \times 0$$

$$= 0$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18b LHS

$$= \frac{z^n - 1}{z - 1} \text{ (Geometric sum noting } z \neq 1, \text{ by definition)}$$

$$= \frac{-1 - 1}{z - 1} \text{ (By De Moivre)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{1 - z}$$

$$= \frac{2}{1 - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)} \times \frac{\operatorname{cis}\frac{-\pi}{2n}}{\operatorname{cis}\frac{-\pi}{2n}}$$

$$= \frac{2\operatorname{cis}\frac{-\pi}{2n}}{\operatorname{cis}\frac{-\pi}{2n} - \operatorname{cis}\frac{\pi}{2n}}$$

$$= \frac{2\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{2n} - i\sin\frac{\pi}{2n}\right)}{-2i\sin\frac{\pi}{2n}}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{i}\cot\frac{\pi}{2n} + 1$$

$$= 1 + i\cot\frac{\pi}{2n}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3B Foundation questions

$$\begin{aligned}
 1a \quad & \cos 3\theta + i \sin 3\theta \\
 &= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^3 \\
 &= \cos^3 \theta + 3 \cos^2 \theta (i \sin \theta) + 3 \cos \theta (i \sin \theta)^2 + (i \sin \theta)^3 \\
 &= \cos^3 \theta + 3i \cos^2 \theta \sin \theta - 3 \cos \theta \sin^2 \theta - i \sin^3 \theta \\
 &= \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta \sin^2 \theta + i(3 \cos^2 \theta \sin \theta - \sin^3 \theta)
 \end{aligned}$$

1a i Equating the real components:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \cos 3\theta &= \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta \sin^2 \theta \\
 &= \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) \\
 &= \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta + 3 \cos^3 \theta \\
 &= 4 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

1a ii Equating imaginary components:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sin 3\theta &= 3 \cos^2 \theta \sin \theta - \sin^3 \theta \\
 &= 3(1 - \sin^2 \theta) \sin \theta - \sin^3 \theta \\
 &= 3 \sin \theta - 3 \sin^3 \theta - \sin^3 \theta \\
 &= 3 \sin \theta - 4 \sin^3 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

1b  $\tan 3\theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{\sin 3\theta}{\cos 3\theta} \\
 &= \frac{3 \sin \theta - 4 \sin^3 \theta}{4 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta} \\
 &= \frac{3 \sin \theta - 4 \sin^3 \theta}{4 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta} \div \frac{\cos^3 \theta}{\cos^3 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{3 \tan \theta \sec^2 \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{4 - 3 \sec^2 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{3 \tan \theta (\tan^2 \theta + 1) - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{4 - 3(\tan^2 \theta + 1)} \\
 &= \frac{3 \tan^3 \theta + 3 \tan \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{4 - 3 \tan^2 \theta - 3} \\
 &= \frac{3 \tan \theta - \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 3 \tan^2 \theta}
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 2 \quad & \cos 4\theta + i \sin 4\theta \\
 &= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^4 \\
 &= \cos^4 \theta + 4 \cos^3 \theta (i \sin \theta) + 6 \cos^2 \theta (i \sin \theta)^2 + 4 \cos \theta (i \sin \theta)^3 + (i \sin \theta)^4 \\
 &= \cos^4 \theta + 4i \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta - 4i \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^4 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

2a Equating the real components of the above equation:

$$\cos 4\theta = \cos^4 \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta$$

2b Equating the imaginary components of the above equation:

$$\sin 4\theta = 4 \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 2c \quad & \tan 4\theta \\
 &= \frac{\sin 4\theta}{\cos 4\theta} \\
 &= \frac{4 \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta}{\cos^4 \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{4 \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta}{\cos^4 \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta} \div \frac{\cos^4 \theta}{\cos^4 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{4 \tan \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 6 \tan^2 \theta + \tan^4 \theta}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 3a \quad & z^n + z^{-n} \\
 &= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^n + (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^{-n} \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 3b \quad & (z + z^{-1})^4 \\
 &= z^4 + 4z^3z^{-1} + 6z^2z^{-2} + 4z^1z^{-3} + z^{-4} \\
 &= z^4 + 4z^2 + 6 + 4z^{-2} + z^{-4} \\
 &= (z^4 + z^{-4}) + 4(z^2 + z^{-2}) + 6
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

3c  $\cos^4 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \cos \theta \right)^4 \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{2} (z + z^{-1}) \right)^4 \\ &= \frac{1}{16} (z + z^{-1})^4 \\ &= \frac{1}{16} ((z^4 + z^{-4}) + 4(z^2 + z^{-2}) + 16) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} (2 \cos 4\theta + 8 \cos 2\theta + 16) \\ &= \frac{1}{8} \cos 4\theta + \frac{1}{2} \cos 2\theta + 1 \end{aligned}$$

4  $z^n - z^{-n}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^n - (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^{-n} \\ &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - (\cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta) \\ &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta \\ &= 2i \sin n\theta \end{aligned}$$

$\sin^4 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \sin \theta \right)^4 \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{2i} (z - z^{-1}) \right)^4 \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^4} (z - z^{-1})^4 \\ &= \frac{1}{2^4 i^4} (z^4 - 4z^3 z^{-1} + 6z^2 z^{-2} - 4z z^{-3} + z^{-4}) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} ((z^4 + z^{-4}) - 4(z^2 + z^{-2}) + 6) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} (2 \cos 4\theta - 8 \cos 2\theta + 6) \\ &= \frac{\cos 4\theta}{8} - \frac{\cos 2\theta}{2} + \frac{3}{8} \end{aligned}$$



### Solutions to Exercise 3B Development questions

5a Let  $z = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$

From question 3,

$$z^n + z^{-n} = 2 \cos n\theta$$

Now following question 3 expanding  $(z + z^{-1})^5$  gives,

$$\begin{aligned} & (z + z^{-1})^5 \\ &= z^5 + 5z^3 + 10z + 10z^{-1} + 5z^{-3} + z^{-5} \\ &= (z^5 + z^{-5}) + 5(z^3 + z^{-3}) + 10(z + z^{-1}) \\ &= 2 \cos(5\theta) + 5(2 \cos(3\theta)) + 10(2 \cos(\theta)) \text{ (using the result above from Q3)} \\ &= 2 \cos 5\theta + 10 \cos 3\theta + 20 \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

Hence, using the result of 3 question again for the LHS, we have,

$$\begin{aligned} 2^5 \cos^5 \theta &= 2 \cos 5\theta + 10 \cos 3\theta + 20 \cos \theta \\ \cos^5 \theta &= \frac{1}{2^5} (2 \cos 5\theta + 10 \cos 3\theta + 20 \cos \theta) \\ \cos^5 \theta &= \frac{1}{16} (\cos 5\theta + 5 \cos 3\theta + 10 \cos \theta) \end{aligned}$$

5b

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^5 \theta \, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{1}{16} (\cos 5\theta + 5 \cos 3\theta + 10 \cos \theta) \, d\theta \\ &= \left[ \frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{1}{5} \sin 5\theta + \frac{5}{3} \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta \right) \right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{1}{5} \sin \frac{5\pi}{2} + \frac{5}{3} \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} + 10 \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{1}{5} (1) + \frac{5}{3} (-1) + 10(1) \right) \\ &= \frac{8}{15} \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 6a \quad & \cos 6\alpha + i \sin 6\alpha \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(6\alpha) \\
 &= (\operatorname{cis}(\alpha))^6 \\
 &= (\cos \alpha + i \sin \alpha)^6 \\
 &= \cos^6 \alpha + 6i \cos^5 \alpha \sin \alpha + 15i^2 \cos^4 \alpha \sin^2 \alpha + 20i^3 \cos^3 \alpha \sin^3 \alpha \\
 &\quad + 15i^4 \cos^2 \alpha \sin^4 \alpha + 6i^5 \cos \alpha \sin^5 \alpha + i^6 \sin^6 \alpha \\
 &= \cos^6 \alpha + 6i \cos^5 \alpha \sin \alpha - 15 \cos^4 \alpha \sin^2 \alpha - 20i \cos^3 \alpha \sin^3 \alpha \\
 &\quad + 15 \cos^2 \alpha \sin^4 \alpha + 6i \cos \alpha \sin^5 \alpha - \sin^6 \alpha \\
 &= (\cos^6 \alpha - 15 \cos^4 \alpha \sin^2 \alpha + 15 \cos^2 \alpha \sin^4 \alpha - \sin^6 \alpha) \\
 &\quad + i(6 \cos^5 \alpha \sin \alpha - 20 \cos^3 \alpha \sin^3 \alpha + 6 \cos \alpha \sin^5 \alpha)
 \end{aligned}$$

Equating real and imaginary components

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \cos 6\alpha \\
 &= \cos^6 \alpha - 15 \cos^4 \alpha \sin^2 \alpha + 15 \cos^2 \alpha \sin^4 \alpha - \sin^6 \alpha \\
 &= \cos^6 \alpha - 15 \cos^4 \alpha (1 - \cos^2 \alpha) + 15 \cos^2 \alpha (1 - \cos^2 \alpha)^2 - (1 - \cos^2 \alpha)^3 \\
 &= \cos^6 \alpha - 15 \cos^4 \alpha (1 - \cos^2 \alpha) + 15 \cos^2 \alpha (1 - 2 \cos^2 \alpha + \cos^4 \alpha) \\
 &\quad - (1 - 3 \cos^2 \alpha + 3 \cos^4 \alpha - \cos^6 \alpha) \\
 &= 32 \cos^6 \alpha - 48 \cos^4 \alpha + 18 \cos^2 \alpha - 1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$6b \quad 32 \cos^6 \alpha - 48 \cos^4 \alpha + 18 \cos^2 \alpha - 1 = 0$$

is solved when

$$\cos 6\alpha = 0 \text{ (from part a)}$$

which is when,  $6\alpha = \frac{n\pi}{2}$ , for  $n$  not divisible by 2. Hence,

$$\alpha = \frac{n\pi}{12} \text{ for } n = 1, 3, 4, 5, 9, 11 \text{ (i.e. } n \text{ is not divisible by 2)}$$

and, letting  $x = \cos \alpha$ , the equation becomes,

$$32x^6 + 4x^3 - 6x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0$$

Which has solutions when,

$$x = \cos \frac{n\pi}{12} \text{ for } n = 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

6c The product of the roots is

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{12} \cos \frac{3\pi}{12} \cos \frac{5\pi}{12} \cos \frac{7\pi}{12} \cos \frac{9\pi}{12} \cos \frac{11\pi}{12} = \frac{-1}{32}$$

$$\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(-\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(\cos \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) \left(-\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) = \frac{-1}{32}$$

$$\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(-\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(\frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \left(-\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) = \frac{-1}{32}$$

$$\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\right) = \frac{1}{32}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12} \cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{32}$$

$$\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{12} \cos \frac{5\pi}{12}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{16}$$

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{12} \cos \frac{5\pi}{12} = \pm \frac{1}{4}$$

Since  $\cos \frac{\pi}{12} > 0$  and  $\cos \frac{5\pi}{12} > 0$  it follows that

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{12} \cos \frac{5\pi}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$$

7a Let  $x = \tan \theta$

$$x^4 + 4x^3 - 6x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0$$

$$\tan^4 \theta + 4 \tan^3 \theta - 6 \tan^2 \theta - 4 \tan \theta + 1 = 0$$

$$\tan^4 \theta - 6 \tan^2 \theta + 1 = 4 \tan \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta$$

$$1 = \frac{4 \tan^3 \theta - 4 \tan \theta}{\tan^4 \theta - 6 \tan^2 \theta + 1}$$

$$1 = \tan 4\theta$$

$$4\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{9\pi}{4}, \frac{13\pi}{4}$$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{16}, \frac{5\pi}{16}, \frac{9\pi}{16}, \frac{13\pi}{16}$$

Hence the equation is solved when  $x = \tan \frac{\pi}{16}, \tan \frac{5\pi}{16}, \tan \frac{9\pi}{16}, \tan \frac{13\pi}{16}$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7b The sum of the roots is

$$\tan \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{13\pi}{16} = -4$$

Hence

$$\left( \tan \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{13\pi}{16} \right)^2 = 16$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{13\pi}{16} \\ & + 2 \left( \tan \frac{\pi}{16} \tan \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{\pi}{16} \tan \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{\pi}{16} \tan \frac{13\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{5\pi}{16} \tan \frac{9\pi}{16} \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \tan \frac{5\pi}{16} \tan \frac{13\pi}{16} + \tan \frac{9\pi}{16} \tan \frac{13\pi}{16} \right) = 16 \end{aligned}$$

However, the term in the brackets is just the sum of the products of the roots, hence

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{13\pi}{16} + 2(-6) = 16$$

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{9\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{13\pi}{16} = 28$$

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \left( \tan \left( \pi - \frac{7\pi}{16} \right) \right)^2 + \left( \tan \left( \pi - \frac{3\pi}{16} \right) \right)^2 = 28$$

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \left( -\tan \frac{7\pi}{16} \right)^2 + \left( -\tan \frac{3\pi}{16} \right)^2 = 28$$

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \tan^2 \frac{7\pi}{16} = 28$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 8a \quad & \cos 5\theta + i \sin 5\theta \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(5\theta) \\
 &= (\operatorname{cis}(\theta))^5 \\
 &= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^5 \\
 &= \cos^5 \theta + 5i \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta + 10i^2 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 10i^3 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta \\
 &\quad + 5i^4 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta + i^5 \sin^5 \theta \\
 &= \cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta \\
 &\quad + i(5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta)
 \end{aligned}$$

Equating the imaginary parts of this equation gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sin 5\theta &= 5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta \\
 &= 5(1 - \sin^2 \theta)^2 \sin \theta - 10(1 - \sin^2 \theta) \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta \\
 &= 5(1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta) \sin \theta - 10(1 - \sin^2 \theta) \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta \\
 &= 16 \sin^5 \theta - 20 \sin^3 \theta + 5 \sin \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 8b \quad & \text{Let } x = \sin \theta \\
 & 16x^5 - 20x^3 + 5x - 1 = 0 \\
 & 16 \sin^5 \theta - 20 \sin^3 \theta + 5 \sin \theta - 1 = 0 \\
 & \sin 5\theta - 1 = 0 \text{ (from part a)} \\
 & \sin 5\theta = 1 \\
 & 5\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \frac{9\pi}{2}, \frac{13\pi}{2}, \frac{17\pi}{2} \\
 & \theta = \frac{\pi}{10}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{9\pi}{10}, \frac{13\pi}{10}, \frac{17\pi}{10} \\
 & x = \sin \frac{\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{\pi}{2}, \sin \frac{9\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{13\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{17\pi}{10} \\
 & x = 1, \sin \frac{\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{9\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{13\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{17\pi}{10} \\
 & \text{as required}
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 8c \quad & (4x^2 + bx + c)^2 \\
 & = 16x^4 + 4bx^3 + 4cx^2 + 4bx^3 + b^2x^2 + bcx + 4cx^2 + bcx + c^2 \\
 & = 16x^4 + (4b + 4b)x^3 + (4c + b^2 + 4c)x^2 + (bc + bc)x + c^2 \\
 & = 16x^4 + 8bx^3 + (8c + b^2)x^2 + 2bcx + c^2
 \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned}
 16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1 &= (4x^2 + bx + c)^2 \\
 16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1 &= 16x^4 + 8bx^3 + (8c + b^2)x^2 + 2bcx + c^2
 \end{aligned}$$

Equating coefficients of  $x$  gives

$$16 = 8b \quad (1)$$

$$-4 = 8c + b^2 \quad (2)$$

From (1),  $b = 2$ .

Substituting this into (2) gives  $c = -1$ .

Any root of  $16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1$  is necessarily a root of  $(4x^2 + bx + c)$ . Since there are two factors of  $(4x^2 + bx + c)$  in the original equation, any root will be a root of the quadratic and will be a double root of the initial equations. Since quadratics have two roots, it follows that  $16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0$  must have two double roots (or one quadruple root).

$$8d \quad \text{Dividing } 16x^5 - 20x^3 + 5x - 1 \text{ by } (x - 1) \text{ yields } 16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 + 1.$$

Hence it follows that since  $x = 1, \sin \frac{\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{9\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{13\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{17\pi}{10}$  are roots of the former equation, and since  $x = 1$  is a root of the divisor,

$x = \sin \frac{\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{9\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{13\pi}{10}, \sin \frac{17\pi}{10}$  must be roots of the quotient  $16x^4 + 16x^3 - 4x^2 + 1$  as required.

There is no contradiction to part c as  $\sin \frac{9\pi}{10} = \sin \left( \pi - \frac{\pi}{10} \right) = \sin \frac{\pi}{10}$  and

$\sin \frac{13\pi}{10} = \sin \left( 3\pi - \frac{13\pi}{10} \right) = \sin \frac{17\pi}{10}$  and so indeed there are two double roots.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8e The sum of the roots is

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} + \sin \frac{\pi}{10} + \sin \frac{13\pi}{10} + \sin \frac{13\pi}{10} + 1 = 0$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} + \sin \frac{\pi}{10} - \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} - \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} + 1 = 0$$

$$2 \sin \frac{\pi}{10} - 2 \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} + 1 = 0$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} - \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} + \frac{1}{2} = 0$$

Hence

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} = \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} - \frac{1}{2} \quad (1)$$

The product of the roots is

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} \sin \frac{\pi}{10} \sin \frac{13\pi}{10} \sin \frac{13\pi}{10} (1) = \frac{1}{16}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} \sin \frac{\pi}{10} \left(-\sin \frac{3\pi}{10}\right) \left(-\sin \frac{3\pi}{10}\right) = \frac{1}{16}$$

$$\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{10} \sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{1}{16} \quad (2)$$

Hence,

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{1}{4} \quad (\text{we take the positive solution as } \sin \frac{\pi}{10} > 0 \text{ and } \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} > 0)$$

Substituting (1) in (2) gives:

$$\left(\sin \frac{3\pi}{10} - \frac{1}{2}\right) \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{10} - \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} - \frac{1}{4} = 0$$

So,

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \frac{3\pi}{10} &= \frac{-\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) \pm \sqrt{\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 - 4(1)\left(-\frac{1}{4}\right)}}{2} \\ &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{4} \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

Since  $\sin \frac{3\pi}{10} > 0$ ,

$$\sin \frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{10} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4} - \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{4}$$

9a  $\cos 7\theta + i \sin 7\theta$

$$= \text{cis}(7\theta)$$

$$= (\text{cis}(\theta))^7$$

$$= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^7$$

$$= \cos^7 \theta + 7i \cos^6 \theta \sin \theta + 21i^2 \cos^5 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 35i^3 \cos^4 \theta \sin^3 \theta$$

$$+ 35i^4 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta + 21i^5 \cos^2 \theta \sin^5 \theta + 7i^6 \cos \theta \sin^6 \theta + i^7 \sin^7 \theta$$

$$= \cos^7 \theta + 7i \cos^6 \theta \sin \theta - 21 \cos^5 \theta \sin^2 \theta - 35i \cos^4 \theta \sin^3 \theta + 35 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta$$

$$+ 21i \cos^2 \theta \sin^5 \theta - 7 \cos \theta \sin^6 \theta - i \sin^7 \theta$$

Equating the real components on both sides of the equation

$$\cos 7\theta = \cos^7 \theta - 21 \cos^5 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 35 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta - 7 \cos \theta \sin^6 \theta$$

$$= \cos^7 \theta - 21 \cos^5 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) + 35 \cos^3 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta)^2$$

$$- 7 \cos \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta)^3$$

$$= \cos^7 \theta - 21 \cos^5 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) + 35 \cos^3 \theta (1 - 2 \cos^2 \theta + \cos^4 \theta)$$

$$- 7 \cos \theta (1 - 3 \cos^2 \theta + 3 \cos^4 \theta - \cos^6 \theta)$$

$$= 64 \cos^7 \theta - 112 \cos^5 \theta + 56 \cos^3 \theta - 7 \cos \theta$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

9b Let  $x = 4 \cos^2 \theta$ , then the polynomial becomes,

$$(4 \cos^2 \theta)^3 - 7(4 \cos^2 \theta)^2 + 14(4 \cos^2 \theta) - 7 = 0$$

$$64 \cos^6 \theta - 112 \cos^4 \theta + 56 \cos^2 \theta - 7 = 0 \text{ (multiply by } \cos \theta \text{)}$$

Noting that roots in the form  $\cos \theta = 0$ , won't be solutions of the original polynomial. Now using part a we have,

$$\cos 7\theta = 0$$

Which is true whenever we have,

$$7\theta = n\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer, Hence,}$$

$$7\theta = \left(\frac{2n \pm 1}{2}\right)\pi$$

$$\theta = \left(\frac{2n \pm 1}{14}\right)\pi$$

So

$$x = 4 \cos^2 \left(\frac{2n \pm 1}{14}\right)\pi \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer, hence some unique roots are:}$$

$$x = 4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14}, 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14}, 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14}, n = 0, 1, 2 \text{ and taking } + 1$$

9c i The sum of the roots in the above equation is

$$4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} = \frac{-(-7)}{1} = 7$$

Hence

$$\cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} = \frac{7}{4}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

9c ii

$$\left(\cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{7}{4}\right)^2 \quad (\text{using 9c i})$$

Expanding gives,

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos^4 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{5\pi}{14} \\ &\quad + 2 \left( \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} + \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} \right) \\ &= \left(\frac{7}{4}\right)^2 \\ &\cos^4 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{5\pi}{14} \\ &\quad + \frac{2}{16} \left( 4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} \right) \\ &= \left(\frac{7}{4}\right)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now using the sum of root products, we have,

$$4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} + 4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{14} 4 \cos^2 \frac{5\pi}{14} = \frac{14}{1} = 14$$

Hence, we have,

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos^4 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{5\pi}{14} + \frac{2}{16} (14) = \left(\frac{7}{4}\right)^2 \\ &\cos^4 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{5\pi}{14} = \left(\frac{7}{4}\right)^2 - \frac{28}{16} \\ &\cos^4 \frac{\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{14} + \cos^4 \frac{5\pi}{14} = \frac{21}{16} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10a Let  $z = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta = \text{cis}(\theta)$

Using the result from question 3 we have,

$$z^n - z^{-n} = 2i \sin n\theta$$

We also have that,

$$\begin{aligned} (z - z^{-1})^5 &= z^5 - 5z^3 + 10z - 10z^{-1} + 5z^{-3} - z^{-5} \\ &= (z^5 - z^{-5}) - 5(z^3 - z^{-3}) + 10(z - z^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

Using the result above we get,

$$(2i \sin \theta)^5 = 2i \sin 5\theta - 5(2i \sin 3\theta) + 10(2i \sin \theta)$$

$$2^5 i^5 \sin^5 \theta = 2i \sin 5\theta - 5(2i \sin 3\theta) + 10(2i \sin \theta)$$

$$2^5 i \sin^5 \theta = 2i \sin 5\theta - 5(2i \sin 3\theta) + 10(2i \sin \theta)$$

$$2^4 \sin^5 \theta = \sin 5\theta - 5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta$$

$$\sin^5 \theta = \frac{1}{16} (\sin 5\theta - 5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10b From above we know that

$$16 \sin^5 \theta = \sin 5\theta - 5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta$$

Hence,  $16 \sin^5 \theta = \sin 5\theta$  if and only if

$$-5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta = 0$$

$$10 \sin \theta = 5 \sin 3\theta$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} \sin 3\theta$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} (\sin \theta \cos 2\theta + \sin 2\theta \cos \theta) \text{ (using angle sum identity)}$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} (\sin \theta (1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta) + (2 \sin \theta \cos \theta) \cos \theta) \text{ (double angle identity)}$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} (\sin \theta (1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta) + 2 \sin \theta \cos^2 \theta)$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} (\sin \theta (1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta) + 2 \sin \theta (1 - \sin^2 \theta))$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} \sin \theta ((1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta) + 2(1 - \sin^2 \theta))$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} \sin \theta (3 - 4 \sin^2 \theta)$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \sin \theta (3 - 4 \sin^2 \theta) - \sin \theta = 0$$

$$\sin \theta (3 - 4 \sin^2 \theta) - 2 \sin \theta = 0$$

$$\sin \theta (1 - 4 \sin^2 \theta) = 0$$

$$\sin \theta (1 - 2 \sin \theta)(1 + 2 \sin \theta) = 0$$

Hence the solution occurs whenever  $\sin \theta = 0, \pm \frac{1}{2}$

Thus,  $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \pi, \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}, \dots$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11a Let  $z = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta = \text{cis}(\theta)$

So,

$$\cos 5\theta + i \sin 5\theta$$

$$= \text{cis}(5\theta)$$

$$= (\text{cis}(\theta))^5$$

$$= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^5$$

$$= \cos^5 \theta + 5i \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta + 10i^2 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 10i^3 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta$$

$$+ 5i^4 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta + i^5 \sin^5 \theta$$

$$= (\cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta)$$

$$+ i(5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta)$$

Equating real and imaginary components,

$$\cos 5\theta = \cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta$$

$$\sin 5\theta = 5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta$$

$$\tan 5\theta = \frac{\sin 5\theta}{\cos 5\theta}$$

$$= \frac{5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta}{\cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{5 \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^5 \theta}{\cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta} \div \frac{\cos^5 \theta}{\cos^5 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{5 \tan \theta - 10 \tan^3 \theta + \tan^5 \theta}{1 - 10 \tan^2 \theta + 5 \tan^4 \theta}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11b Let  $x = \tan \theta$ , then  $x^4 - 10x^2 + 5 = 0$  becomes,

$$\tan^4 \theta - 10 \tan^2 \theta + 5 = 0$$

$$\tan \theta (\tan^4 \theta - 10 \tan^2 \theta + 5) = \tan \theta \times 0$$

$$\tan^5 \theta - 10 \tan^3 \theta + 5 \tan \theta = 0$$

$$\frac{\tan^5 \theta - 10 \tan^3 \theta + 5 \tan \theta}{1 - 10 \tan^2 \theta + 5 \tan^4 \theta} = 0$$

$$\tan 5\theta = 0 \text{ (from part a)}$$

$$5\theta = \pm\pi, \pm2\pi$$

$$\theta = \pm\frac{\pi}{5}, \pm\frac{2\pi}{5}$$

Hence the roots are

$$x = \tan\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{5}\right), \tan\left(\pm\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$$

$$x = \pm \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right), \pm \tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$$

11c The product of roots is

$$\left(\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) = 5$$

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{5} \tan^2 \frac{2\pi}{5} = 5$$

$$\tan \frac{\pi}{5} \tan \frac{2\pi}{5} = \sqrt{5} \text{ (taking the positive solution as } \tan \frac{\pi}{5} > 0 \text{ and } \tan \frac{2\pi}{5} > 0)$$

The product of the pairs of roots is

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \left(\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \left(\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) \\ & + \left(-\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \left(\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \left(-\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(-\tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) \\ & = -10 \end{aligned}$$

Which simplifies to,

$$\tan^2 \frac{\pi}{5} + \tan^2 \frac{2\pi}{5} = 10$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12a

$$\begin{aligned}
 z^n + \frac{1}{z^n} &= (\operatorname{cis}(\theta))^n + \frac{1}{(\operatorname{cis}(\theta))^n} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(n\theta) + \frac{1}{\operatorname{cis}(n\theta)} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(n\theta) + \operatorname{cis}(-n\theta) \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 z^n - \frac{1}{z^n} &= (\operatorname{cis}(\theta))^n - \frac{1}{(\operatorname{cis}(\theta))^n} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(n\theta) - \frac{1}{\operatorname{cis}(n\theta)} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(n\theta) - \operatorname{cis}(-n\theta) \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - (\cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta) \\
 &= 2i \sin n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

12b  $128 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 8 \cos^3 \theta \cdot 16 \sin^4 \theta \\
 &= (2 \cos \theta)^3 (2i \sin \theta)^4 \\
 &= \left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)^3 \left(z - \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 \quad (\text{from part a}) \\
 &= \left(z^3 + 3z + \frac{3}{z} + \frac{1}{z^3}\right) \left(z^4 - 4z^2 + 6 - \frac{4}{z^2} + \frac{1}{z^4}\right) \\
 &= z^7 - 4z^5 + 6z^3 - 4z + \frac{1}{z} + 3z^5 - 12z^3 + 18z - \frac{12}{z} + \frac{3}{z^3} + 3z^3 - 12z + \frac{18}{z} \\
 &\quad - \frac{12}{z^3} + \frac{3}{z^5} + z - \frac{4}{z} + \frac{6}{z^3} - \frac{4}{z^5} + \frac{1}{z^7} \\
 &= \left(z^7 + \frac{1}{z^7}\right) - \left(z^5 + \frac{1}{z^5}\right) - 3\left(z^3 + \frac{1}{z^3}\right) + 3\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12c From part b,

$$128 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta = \left(z^7 + \frac{1}{z^7}\right) - \left(z^5 + \frac{1}{z^5}\right) - 3\left(z^3 + \frac{1}{z^3}\right) + 3\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)$$

Using the result from part a,

$$128 \cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta = 2 \cos 7\theta - 2 \cos 5\theta - 3 \times 2 \cos 3\theta + 3 \times 2 \cos \theta$$

Hence

$$\cos^3 \theta \sin^4 \theta = \frac{1}{64} (\cos 7\theta - \cos 5\theta - 3 \cos 3\theta + 3 \cos \theta)$$

as required

13a  $5z^4 - 11z^3 + 16z^2 - 11z + 5 = 0$

$$5z^2 - 11z + 16 - \frac{11}{z} + \frac{5}{z^2} = 0$$

$$5\left(z^2 + \frac{1}{z^2}\right) - 11\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right) + 16 = 0$$

$$5(2 \cos 2\theta) - 11(2 \cos \theta) + 16 = 0$$

$$5 \cos 2\theta - 11 \cos \theta + 8 = 0$$

13b  $5(2 \cos^2 \theta - 1) - 11 \cos \theta + 8 = 0$  (using the result in a and double angle id)

$$10 \cos^2 \theta - 11 \cos \theta + 3 = 0$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{-(-11) \pm \sqrt{(-11)^2 - 4(10)(3)}}{2(10)}$$

$$= \frac{11 \pm \sqrt{1}}{20}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } \frac{3}{5}$$

When  $\cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\sin \theta = \pm \frac{\sqrt{2^2 - 1}}{2} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

When  $\cos \theta = \frac{3}{5}$ ,  $\sin \theta = \pm \frac{\sqrt{5^2 - 3^2}}{5} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{16}}{5} = \pm \frac{4}{5}$

$$z = \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$$

$$z = \frac{3}{5} \pm \frac{4}{5}i$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14a

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\sin 8\theta}{\sin \theta \cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{2 \sin 4\theta \cos 4\theta}{\sin \theta \cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{2(2 \sin 2\theta \cos 2\theta)(2 \cos^2 2\theta - 1)}{\sin \theta \cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{2(2(2 \sin \theta \cos \theta)(1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta))(2(1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta)^2 - 1)}{\sin \theta \cos \theta} \\ &= 8(1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta)(2(1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta)^2 - 1) \end{aligned}$$

Let  $s = \sin \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 8(1 - 2s^2)(2(1 - 2s^2)^2 - 1) \\ &= 8(1 - 2s^2)(2(1 - 4s^2 + 4s^4) - 1) \\ &= 8(1 - 2s^2)(1 - 8s^2 + 8s^4) \\ &= 8(1 - 8s^2 + 8s^4 - 2s^2 + 16s^4 - 16s^6) \\ &= 8(1 - 10s^2 + 24s^4 - 16s^6) \end{aligned}$$

14b  $x^6 - 6x^4 + 10x^2 - 4 = 0$

Let  $x = 2 \sin \theta = 2s$

$$\begin{aligned} &(2s)^6 - 6(2s)^4 + 10(2s)^2 - 4 = 0 \\ &64s^6 - 6 \times 16s^4 + 40s^2 - 4 = 0 \\ &4(16s^6 - 24s^4 + 10s^2 - 1) = 0 \\ &-\frac{1}{2}(8(1 - 10s^2 + 24s^4 - 16s^6)) = 0 \\ &-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\sin 8\theta}{\sin \theta \cos \theta}\right) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Which is 0 when,  $\sin 8\theta = 0$ . Hence,

$$8\theta = n\pi \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3$$

Thus,

$$x = 2 \sin \frac{n\pi}{8} \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3B Enrichment questions

15a  $\text{cis } (2n + 1)\theta$

$$= (\text{cis } \theta)^{2n+1} \quad (\text{By de Moivre})$$

$$= {}^{2n+1}C_0 \cos^{2n+1} \theta + i \times {}^{2n+1}C_1 \cos^{2n} \theta \sin \theta - {}^{2n+1}C_2 \cos^{2n-1} \theta \sin^2 \theta - \\ i \times {}^{2n+1}C_3 \cos^{2n-2} \theta \sin^3 \theta + {}^{2n+1}C_4 \cos^{2n-3} \theta \sin^4 \theta + i \times {}^{2n+1}C_5 \cos^{2n-4} \theta \sin^5 \theta \\ + \dots + i^{2n+1} \times {}^{2n+1}C_{2n+1} \sin^{2n+1} \theta$$

Take imaginary points, and note  $i^{2n} = (-1)^n$ , to get:

$$\sin(2n + 1)\theta \\ = {}^{2n+1}C_1 \cos^{2n} \theta \sin \theta - {}^{2n+1}C_3 \cos^{2n-2} \theta \sin^3 \theta + {}^{2n+1}C_5 \cos^{2n-4} \theta \sin^5 \theta \\ + \dots + (-1)^n \sin^{2n+1} \theta$$

15b Divide through by  $\sin^{2n+1} \theta$  for  $\sin \theta \neq 0$ .

$$\frac{\sin(2n + 1)\theta}{\sin^{2n+1} \theta} = {}^{2n+1}C_1 \cot^{2n} \theta - {}^{2n+1}C_3 \cot^{2n-2} \theta + {}^{2n+1}C_5 \cot^{2n-4} \theta + \dots + (-1)^n$$

Let  $x = \cot^2 \theta$ , so that,

$$\frac{\sin(2n + 1)\theta}{\sin^{2n+1} \theta} = {}^{2n+1}C_1 x^n - {}^{2n+1}C_3 x^{n-1} + {}^{2n+1}C_5 x^{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^n = P(x)$$

Now  $P(x) = 0$  when  $\sin(2n + 1)\theta = 0$  with  $\sin \theta \neq 0$ , which has solutions

$$(2n + 1)\theta = k\pi, \text{ for integer } k \text{ with } k \neq 0 \text{ (} \sin \theta \neq 0 \text{)}.$$

For principal values we have  $-\pi < \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \leq \pi$  and so for distinct solutions of  $x$ ,

$$k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n \text{ (degree } n \text{ polynomial)}$$

Hence,

$$\theta = \frac{k\pi}{2n+1}, k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$$

Hence,  $P(x) = 0$  for,

$$x = \cot^2 \frac{k\pi}{2n+1}, k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

15c Summing the roots of the polynomial:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \sum_{k=1}^n \cot^2 \left( \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \right) \\
 &= \frac{C_3}{C_1} \quad \left( - \frac{\text{coefficient of } x^{n-1}}{\text{coefficient of } x^n} \right) \\
 &= \frac{(2n+1)!}{3! (2n-2)!} \cdot \frac{1! 2n!}{(2n+1)!} \\
 &= \frac{2n(2n-1)(2n-2)!}{3 \times 2 \times (2n-2)!} \\
 &= \frac{n(2n-1)}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

15d

$$\cot \theta < \frac{1}{\theta} \text{ for } 0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}, \text{ so for } \theta = \frac{k\pi}{2n+1},$$

$$\sum_{k=1}^n \cot^2 \left( \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \right) < \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{2n+1}{k\pi} \right)^2$$

Hence,

$$\left( \frac{2n+1}{\pi} \right)^2 \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k^2} > \frac{2n(2n-1)}{6} \quad (\text{using part c})$$

$$\frac{(2n+1)^2}{2n(2n-1)} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k^2} > \frac{\pi^2}{6}$$

This is,

$$\frac{(2n+1)^2}{2n(2n-1)} \left( \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2} \right) > \frac{\pi^2}{6}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3C Foundation questions

1a  $z^3 = 1$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^3 = 1$$

$$r^3 \operatorname{cis} 3\theta = 1$$

$$r^3 \operatorname{cis} 3\theta = 1 \times \operatorname{cis} 2k\pi$$

$$r = \sqrt[3]{1} = 1 \text{ and } 3\theta = 2k\pi \text{ so } \theta = \frac{2k\pi}{3}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi + 2k\pi}{3} \right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}, \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right), \operatorname{cis} 0$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i, -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i, 1$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

1b

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \left( -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) - \left( -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) \right| \\ &= |\sqrt{3}i| \\ &= \sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \left( -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) - 1 \right| \\ &= \left| -\frac{3}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right| \\ &= \sqrt{\left( -\frac{3}{2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{3}{4}} \\ &= \sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \left( -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) - 1 \right| \\ &= \left| -\frac{3}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right| \\ &= \sqrt{\left( -\frac{3}{2} \right)^2 + \left( -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{3}{4}} \\ &= \sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

This shows that all sides of the triangle have the same length and thus it is equilateral.



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

1c In the case that  $\text{cis } \frac{2\pi}{3}$  is the root,

$$\left(\text{cis } \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)^2 = \text{cis } \frac{4\pi}{3} = \text{cis } \left(\frac{4\pi}{3} - 2\pi\right) = \text{cis } \left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \text{ is the other root.}$$

In the case that  $\text{cis } \left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$  is the root,

$$\left(\text{cis } \left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\right)^2 = \text{cis } \left(-\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = \text{cis } \left(2\pi - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = \text{cis } \frac{2\pi}{3} \text{ is the other root.}$$

1d i

$$\left(\text{cis } \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)^3 = \text{cis } \frac{6\pi}{3} = \text{cis } 2\pi = 1$$

$$\left(\text{cis } \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)^3 = \text{cis } \frac{12\pi}{3} = \text{cis } 4\pi = 1$$

so in either case the answer is one.

Alternately, covering both cases at once:

$$\omega = \text{cis } \frac{2k\pi}{3}$$

$$\omega^3 = \text{cis } \left(3 \times \frac{2k\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= \text{cis } 2k\pi$$

$$= 1$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

1d ii If  $\omega = \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + \omega + \omega^2 \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} + \left( \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} \right)^2 \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} + \text{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} + \text{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\ &= 1 + \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} - i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + 2 \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

If  $\omega = \text{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + \omega + \omega^2 \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3} + \left( \text{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3} \right)^2 \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3} + \text{cis} \frac{8\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + \text{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right) + \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} - i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ &= 1 + 2 \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 1e\ i \quad & (1 + \omega^2)^3 \\
 & = (-\omega)^3 \\
 & = -\omega^3 \\
 & = -1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 1e\ ii \quad & (1 - \omega - \omega^2)(1 - \omega + \omega^2)(1 + \omega - \omega^2) \\
 & = (1 - (\omega + \omega^2))(1 + \omega^2 - \omega)(1 + \omega - \omega^2) \\
 & = (1 - (-1))(-\omega - \omega)(-\omega^2 - \omega^2) \\
 & = 2(-2\omega)(-2\omega^2) \\
 & = 8\omega^3 \\
 & = 8(1) \\
 & = 8
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 1e\ iii \quad & (1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2)(1 - \omega^4)(1 - \omega^5) \\
 & = (1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2)(1 - \omega^3\omega)(1 - \omega^3\omega^2) \\
 & = (1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2)(1 - (1)\omega)(1 - (1)\omega^2) \\
 & = (1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2)(1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2) \\
 & = ((1 - \omega)(1 - \omega^2))^2 \\
 & = (1 - \omega - \omega^2 + \omega^3)^2 \\
 & = (1 - \omega - \omega^2 + 1)^2 \\
 & = (1 + 1 + 1)^2 \\
 & = 3^2 \\
 & = 9
 \end{aligned}$$

## Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

2a  $z^6 = 1$

Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^6 = 1$$

$$r^6 \operatorname{cis} 6\theta = 1$$

$$r = 1$$

$$\operatorname{cis} 6\theta = \operatorname{cis} 2k\pi$$

$$6\theta = 2k\pi$$

$$\theta = \frac{k\pi}{3}$$

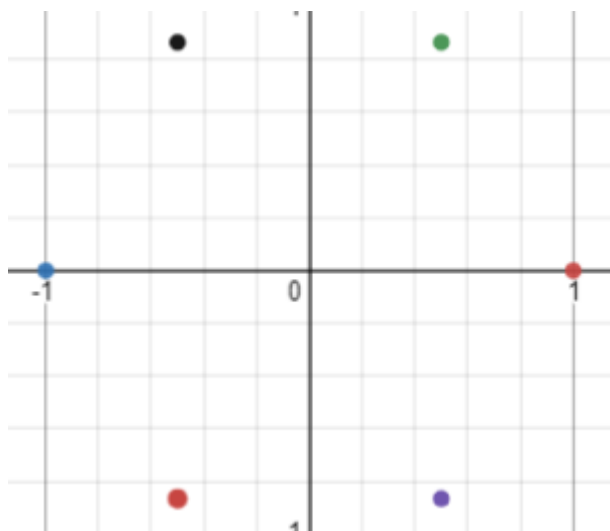
$$z = \operatorname{cis} \frac{k\pi}{3}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} 0, \operatorname{cis} \left(\pm \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \operatorname{cis} \left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{3}\right), \operatorname{cis} \pi$$

$$z = 1, \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i, -\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i, -1$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

2b



All points are the same distance from the origin as,  
 $|1| = 1$

$$\left| \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right| = \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}} = \sqrt{1} = 1$$

$$\left| -\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right| = \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}} = \sqrt{1} = 1$$

$$|-1| = 1$$

Since  $z = \text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{3}$ , each root has an argument of  $\frac{\pi}{3}$  between it and the adjacent roots, hence all roots are the same distance from the origin with the same argument between them relative to the origin so they form the corners of a regular hexagon.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

2c

$$\alpha = \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$\alpha^2 = \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}\right)^2 = \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \text{ which is a root}$$

$$\alpha^{-2} = \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}\right)^{-2} = \operatorname{cis} \left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \text{ which is a root}$$

$$\alpha^{-1} = \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}\right)^{-1} = \operatorname{cis} \left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) \text{ which is a root}$$

2d

$$\begin{aligned} & (z^4 + z^2 + 1)(z^2 - 1) \\ &= z^6 + z^4 + z^2 - (z^4 + z^2 + 1) \\ &= z^6 - 1 \end{aligned}$$

2e

The roots of  $z^2 - 1$  are  $z = \pm 1$ , which are the real roots of  $z^6 - 1$ . So the roots of  $z^4 + z^2 + 1$  must be the complex roots of  $z^6 - 1$ . Thus

$$\begin{aligned} & z^4 + z^2 + 1 \\ &= \left(z - \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \left(z - \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \left(z - \left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \left(z - \left(-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \\ &= \left(z^2 - \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)z + \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \times \\ & \quad \left(z^2 - \left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)z + \left(-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)\right) \\ &= \left(z^2 - z + \left(\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}\right)\right) \left(z^2 - (-1)z + \left(\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}\right)\right) \\ &= (z^2 - z + 1)(z^2 + z + 1) \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

3a  $z^4 = -1$

Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^4 = -1$$

$$r^4 \operatorname{cis} 4\theta = -1$$

$$r = 1$$

$$\operatorname{cis} 4\theta = -1$$

$$4\theta = \pi \pm 2k\pi$$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi \pm 2k\pi}{4}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi \pm 2k\pi}{4} \right)$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \pm \frac{\pi}{4} \right), \operatorname{cis} \left( \pm \frac{3\pi}{4} \right)$$

$$z = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i$$

3b 
$$\begin{aligned} & \left( z - \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i \right) \right) \left( z - \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i \right) \right) \left( z - \left( -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i \right) \right) \left( z - \left( -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i \right) \right) \\ &= (z^2 - \sqrt{2}z + 1)(z^2 + \sqrt{2}z + 1) \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

4a  $z^6 + 1 = 0$

$$z^6 = -1$$

$$z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^6 = -1$$

$$r^6 \operatorname{cis} 6\theta = -1$$

$$r = 1$$

$$\operatorname{cis} 6\theta = -1$$

$$6\theta = \pi \pm 2k\pi$$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi \pm 2k\pi}{6}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi \pm 2k\pi}{6} \right)$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \pm \frac{\pi}{6} \right), \operatorname{cis} \left( \pm \frac{3\pi}{6} \right), \operatorname{cis} \left( \pm \frac{5\pi}{6} \right)$$

$$z = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}i, \pm i, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}i$$

4b  $(z^6 + 1)$

$$= (z - i)(z + i) \left( z - \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \right) \right) \left( z - \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i \right) \right) \left( z - \left( -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \right) \right) \times$$

$$\left( z - \left( -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i \right) \right)$$

$$= (z^2 + 1)(z^2 - \sqrt{3}z + 1)(z^2 + \sqrt{3}z + 1)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

4c  $z^6 + 1 = (z^2 + 1)(z^2 - \sqrt{3}z + 1)(z^2 + \sqrt{3}z + 1)$

$$\frac{z^6 + 1}{z^3} = \frac{(z^2 + 1)(z^2 - \sqrt{3}z + 1)(z^2 + \sqrt{3}z + 1)}{z^3}$$

$$z^3 + z^{-3} = (z + z^{-1})(z - \sqrt{3} + z^{-1})(z + \sqrt{3} + z^{-1})$$

Using the result from question 3 in Exercise 3B:

$$2 \cos 3\theta = (2 \cos \theta)(2 \cos \theta - \sqrt{3})(2 \cos \theta + \sqrt{3})$$

$$\cos 3\theta = (\cos \theta)(2 \cos \theta - \sqrt{3})(2 \cos \theta + \sqrt{3})$$

$$\cos 3\theta = 4 \cos \theta \left( \cos \theta - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right) \left( \cos \theta + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right)$$

$$\cos 3\theta = 4 \cos \theta \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{\pi}{6} \right) \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{5\pi}{6} \right)$$

5a  $z^5 = i$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^5 = \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$r^5 \operatorname{cis} 5\theta = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi \right)$$

$$r^5 = 1 \text{ and hence } r = 1$$

$$5\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi$$

$$\theta = \frac{1}{5} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi \right)$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{1}{5} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi \right) \right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{7\pi}{10} \right), \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{3\pi}{10} \right), \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{10}, \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{2}, \operatorname{cis} \frac{9\pi}{10}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

5b  $z^4 = -i$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Let } z &= (r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^4 \\ &= r^4 \operatorname{cis} 4\theta\end{aligned}$$

$$r^4 \operatorname{cis} 4\theta = -i$$

$$r = 1$$

$$\operatorname{cis} 4\theta = -i$$

$$4\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2} \pm 2k\pi$$

$$\theta = \frac{3\pi}{8} \pm \frac{k\pi}{2}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{3\pi}{8} \pm \frac{k\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{5\pi}{8} \right), \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{8} \right), \operatorname{cis} \frac{3\pi}{8}, \operatorname{cis} \frac{7\pi}{8}$$

5c  $z^4 = -8 - 8\sqrt{3}i$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^4 = -8 - 8\sqrt{3}i$$

$$r^4 \operatorname{cis} 4\theta = -8 - 8\sqrt{3}i$$

$$\begin{aligned}r^4 &= \sqrt{8^2 + (8\sqrt{3})^2} \\ &= 16\end{aligned}$$

$$r = 2$$

$$4\theta = 2k\pi + \left( -\pi + \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{8\sqrt{3}}{8} \right) \right)$$

$$4\theta = 2k\pi - \frac{2\pi}{3}$$

$$\theta = \frac{1}{2} \left( k\pi - \frac{\pi}{3} \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}z &= 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{1}{2} \left( k\pi - \frac{\pi}{3} \right) \right) \\ &= 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{6} \right), 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{3} \right), 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{3}, 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6} \\ &= \sqrt{3} - i, -1 - i\sqrt{3}, 1 + i\sqrt{3}, -\sqrt{3} + i\end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$5d \quad z^5 = 16\sqrt{2} - 16\sqrt{2}i$$

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^5 = 16\sqrt{2} - 16\sqrt{2}i$$

$$r^5 \operatorname{cis} 5\theta = 16\sqrt{2} - 16\sqrt{2}i$$

$$\begin{aligned} r^5 &= \sqrt{(16\sqrt{2})^2 + (16\sqrt{2})^2} \\ &= 32 \end{aligned}$$

$$r = 2$$

$$5\theta = 2k\pi + \left( \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{-16\sqrt{2}}{16\sqrt{2}} \right) \right)$$

$$5\theta = 2k\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}$$

$$\theta = \frac{2k\pi}{5} - \frac{\pi}{20}$$

$$z = 2 \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{2k\pi}{5} - \frac{\pi}{20} \right)$$

$$= 2 \operatorname{cis} -\frac{17\pi}{20}, 2 \operatorname{cis} -\frac{9\pi}{20}, 2 \operatorname{cis} -\frac{\pi}{20}, 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{7\pi}{20}, 2 \operatorname{cis} \frac{3\pi}{4}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3C Development questions

6a Let  $z = r\text{cis}(\theta)$  be a fifth root of  $-1$ .

$$r^5\text{cis}^5(\theta) = -1$$

$$r^5\text{cis}(5\theta) = \cos(\pi) = \text{cis}(\pi)$$

Hence  $r = 1$  and  $5\theta = 2\lambda\pi + \pi$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer.

This means that  $\theta = \left(\frac{2\lambda+1}{5}\right)\pi$  and so

$$\theta = \pm\frac{\pi}{5}, \pm\frac{3\pi}{5}, \pi$$

$$z = \text{cis}\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{5}\right), \text{cis}\left(\pm\frac{3\pi}{5}\right), \text{cis}(\pi)$$

$$z = \text{cis}\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{5}\right), \text{cis}\left(\pm\frac{3\pi}{5}\right), -1$$

6b The root with least positive principle argument is  $\alpha = \text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)$ . Now we have,

$$\alpha^3 = \left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)^3 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{5}\right)$$

$$\alpha^7 = \left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)^7 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{5}\right) = \text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{5} - 2\pi\right) = \text{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{5}\right)$$

$$\alpha^9 = \left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)\right)^9 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{9\pi}{5}\right) = \text{cis}\left(\frac{9\pi}{5} - 2\pi\right) = \text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{5}\right)$$

Hence these are the three other complex roots.



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

6c  $\alpha^7$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right) \right)^7 \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{7\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( \pi + \frac{2\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(\pi) \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{2\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(\pi) \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right) \right)^2 \\ &= -\alpha^2 \end{aligned}$$

$\alpha^9$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right) \right)^9 \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{9\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis} \left( \pi + \frac{4\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{cis}(\pi) \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{4\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= - \left( \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right) \right)^4 \\ &= -\alpha^4 \end{aligned}$$

6d  $(1 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^4)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 1 - \alpha^7 - \alpha^9 \quad (\text{from part c}) \\ &= -(-1 + \alpha^7 + \alpha^9) \\ &= -(-1 + \alpha + \alpha^3 + \alpha^7 + \alpha^9) + (\alpha + \alpha^3) \\ &= -0 + \alpha + \alpha^3 \quad (\text{the sum of roots is 0, since the polynomial is } z^5 + 1 = 0) \\ &= \alpha + \alpha^3 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7a Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis}(\theta)$ , be a seventh root of unity then we have,

$$z^7 = r^7 \operatorname{cis}(7\theta) = \operatorname{cis}(0) = 1$$

Hence  $r = 1$  and  $7\theta = 2n\pi$ , where  $n$  is an integer. So we have,

$$\theta = \frac{2n\pi}{7}$$

$$z = \operatorname{cis}(0), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{6\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$z = 1, \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{6\pi}{7}\right)$$

7b The sum of the roots is

$$1 + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right) = 0$$

(as the coefficient of  $z^6$  in the equation  $z^7 - 1 = 0$  is 0)

Expanding we have,

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} - i \sin \frac{2\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} + i \sin \frac{4\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} - i \sin \frac{4\pi}{7} \\ + \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} + i \sin \frac{6\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} - i \sin \frac{6\pi}{7} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} + 2 \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} = 0$$

$$2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} + 2 \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} = -1$$

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7c Writing the equation as a product of factors gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (z-1)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\right) \\
 & \qquad \qquad \qquad \left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\right) \\
 & = (z-1)\left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right) + \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)\right) \\
 & \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\right) + \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\right)\right) \\
 & \qquad \qquad \qquad \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\right) + \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\right)\right) \\
 & = (z-1)\left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right) \\
 & \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right) \\
 & \qquad \qquad \qquad \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Now using the fact that  $\operatorname{cis} x + \operatorname{cis}(-x) = 2 \cos x$ . We have,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & = (z-1)\left(z^2 - z\left(2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right)\left(z^2 - z\left(2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right) \\
 & \left(z^2 - z\left(2 \cos \frac{6\pi}{7}\right) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))\right) \\
 & = (z-1)\left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + 1\right)\left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} + 1\right)\left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{6\pi}{7} + 1\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7d The least positive principal argument is  $\frac{2\pi}{7}$ . Hence,

$$\alpha = \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\alpha^2 = \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)^2$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\alpha^3 = \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)^3$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\alpha^4 = \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)^4$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{7} - 2\pi\right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\alpha^5 = \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)^5$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{10\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{10\pi}{7} - 2\pi\right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\alpha^6 = \left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)\right)^6$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{12\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)$$

These are the other complex roots that we have previously found.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7e Since we have the roots of the polynomial, we can write it in factorised form as,

$$0 = (x - (\alpha + \alpha^6))(x - (\alpha^2 + \alpha^5))(x - (\alpha^3 + \alpha^4))$$

Now, expanding we find that,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = x^3 - ((\alpha + \alpha^6) + (\alpha^2 + \alpha^5) + (\alpha^3 + \alpha^4))x^2 \\ + ((\alpha + \alpha^6)(\alpha^2 + \alpha^5) + (\alpha + \alpha^6)(\alpha^3 + \alpha^4) \\ + (\alpha^2 + \alpha^5)(\alpha^3 + \alpha^4))x - (\alpha + \alpha^6)(\alpha^2 + \alpha^5)(\alpha^3 + \alpha^4) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = x^3 - (\alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6)x^2 \\ + ((\alpha^3 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^8 + \alpha^{11}) + (\alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^9 + \alpha^{10}) \\ + (\alpha^5 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^8 + \alpha^9))x - (\alpha^6 + \alpha^7 + \alpha^9 + \alpha^{10} + \alpha^{11} + \alpha^{12} \\ + \alpha^{14} + \alpha^{15}) \end{aligned}$$

Also note that we have,

$$\alpha^7 = \left( \text{cis} \left( \frac{2\pi}{7} \right) \right)^7 = \text{cis}(2\pi) = 1$$

and because the  $\alpha$  are roots of the equation  $z^7 - 1 = 0$ , we also have,

$$0 = 1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6 \text{ (sum of roots)}$$

Now using the fact that  $\alpha^7 = 1$ , we can simplify the terms in the above expression to get,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = x^3 - (\alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6)x^2 \\ + ((\alpha^3 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^1 + \alpha^4) + (\alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3) \\ + (\alpha^5 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^1 + \alpha^2))x \\ - (\alpha^6 + 1 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + 1 + \alpha^1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = x^3 - (\alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6)x^2 \\ + ((\alpha^3 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^1 + \alpha^4) + (\alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3) \\ + (\alpha^5 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^1 + \alpha^2))x \\ - (\alpha^6 + 1 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + 1 + \alpha^1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = x^3 - (\alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6)x^2 + 2(\alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6)x \\ - ((1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^5 + \alpha^6) + 1) \end{aligned}$$

Which using the sum of roots result above becomes,

$$0 = x^3 - (-1)x^2 + 2(-1)x - (0 + 1)$$

$$0 = x^3 + x^2 - 2x - 1$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8a i Let  $z = r\text{cis}(\theta)$  be a fifth root of 1. Then,

$$r^5\text{cis}^5(\theta) = 1$$

$$r^5\text{cis}(5\theta) = \text{cis}(0) = 1$$

Hence  $r = 1$  and  $5\theta = 2n\pi$  where  $n$  is an integer.

This means that  $\theta = \left(\frac{2n}{5}\right)\pi$  and so

$$\theta = 0, \pm \frac{2\pi}{5}, \pm \frac{4\pi}{5}$$

$$z = \text{cis}(0), \text{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{5}\right), \text{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{5}\right)$$

$$z = 1, \text{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{5}\right), \text{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{5}\right)$$

8a ii Note that all roots have a modulus of 1 from the origin, and that the angle between each of the roots in consecutive order is  $\frac{2\pi}{5}$  radians. For example,

$$\frac{\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)}{\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)} = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right). \text{ Hence, the sections between consecutive roots equally divide } 2\pi$$

into 5 parts, and because each root has modulus 1 the distance between each root is equal. Thus, the roots form the 5 vertices of a regular pentagon.

8a iii Noting that the coefficient of  $z^4$  in the equation  $z^5 - 1 = 0$  is 0, the sum of the roots is,

$$\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \text{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + 1 = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) - i\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) \\ - i\sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + 1 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$2\cos\frac{2\pi}{5} + 2\cos\frac{4\pi}{5} + 1 = 0$$

$$\cos\frac{2\pi}{5} + \cos\frac{4\pi}{5} = -\frac{1}{2}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8b i  $(z - 1)(z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$

$$= z^5 + z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z - (z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$$

$$= z^5 - 1$$

8b ii Since the roots of  $z^5 - 1 = (z - 1)(z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$  are

$$z = \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{5}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{5}\right), 1$$

it follows that the roots of  $(z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$  are

$$z = \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{5}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{5}\right)$$

Factorising  $(z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$

$$\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right)\left(z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right)$$

$$\left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \operatorname{cis}(0)\right)$$

$$\left(z^2 - z\left(\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \operatorname{cis}(0)\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + 1\right)\left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + 1\right) \text{ (using } \operatorname{cis}(x) + \operatorname{cis}(-x) = 2 \cos x \text{)}$$

as required

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8b iii Expanding the result from above we have,

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + 1\right) \left(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + 1\right) \\ &= z^4 + z^3 \left(-2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + z^2 \left(2 + 4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) \\ & \quad + z \left(-2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Equating the coefficients of  $z^2$  gives,

$$1 = 2 + 4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}$$

$$-\frac{1}{4} = \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}$$

Now from part a iii we also have the identity  $\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Subbing this in above we get,

$$-\frac{1}{4} = -\left(\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + \frac{1}{2}\right) \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}$$

$$\left(\cos \frac{4\pi}{5}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} - \frac{1}{4} = 0$$

Solving this quadratic equation, we find,

$$\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = \frac{-\frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + 1}}{2}$$

$$\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

Now,  $\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} < 0$ , and so we have,

$$\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = \frac{-1 - \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

However,

$$\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = -\cos \left(\pi - \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) = -\cos \left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right)$$

Thus, we have,

$$\cos \left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right) = -\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8c i

Let  $x = u + \frac{1}{u}$ , then  $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$  becomes,

$$\left(u + \frac{1}{u}\right)^2 + \left(u + \frac{1}{u}\right) - 1 = 0$$

$$u^2 + 2 + \frac{1}{u^2} + u + \frac{1}{u} - 1 = 0$$

$$u^2 + \frac{1}{u^2} + u + \frac{1}{u} + 1 = 0$$

$$u^4 + 1 + u^3 + u + u^2 = 0$$

$$u^4 + u^3 + u^2 + u + 1 = 0$$

Which has roots  $u = \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{5}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{5}\right)$  from part b. Hence,

For  $u = \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \frac{1}{\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)} \\ &= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) \\ &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - i \sin \frac{2\pi}{5} \\ &= 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$$

For  $u = \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \frac{1}{\operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)} \\ &= \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) \\ &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - i \sin \frac{2\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{5} \\ &= 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\text{For } u = \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right),$$

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \frac{1}{\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)} \\ &= \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) \\ &= \cos\frac{4\pi}{5} + i\sin\frac{4\pi}{5} + \cos\frac{4\pi}{5} - i\sin\frac{4\pi}{5} \\ &= 2\cos\frac{4\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{For } u = \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right),$$

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \frac{1}{\text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)} \\ &= \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) \\ &= \cos\frac{4\pi}{5} - i\sin\frac{4\pi}{5} + \cos\frac{4\pi}{5} + i\sin\frac{4\pi}{5} \\ &= 2\cos\frac{4\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the polynomial has roots  $2\cos\frac{2\pi}{5}$  and  $2\cos\frac{4\pi}{5}$ .

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8c ii Using the above result to factorise the polynomial we have,

$$\left(x - 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}\right) \left(x - 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) = 0$$

$$x^2 - 2x \left(\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + 4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = 0$$

$$x^2 - 2x \left(-\cos \left(\pi - \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}\right) - 4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \left(\pi - \frac{4\pi}{5}\right) = 0$$

$$x^2 + 2x \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{5} - \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}\right) - 4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{\pi}{5} = 0$$

Comparing coefficients with  $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$  we find that,

$$4 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{\pi}{5} = 1$$

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} \cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{1}{4}$$

9a Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis}(\theta)$  be a ninth root of unity, so,

$$z^9 = r^9 \operatorname{cis}(9\theta) = 1 = \operatorname{cis}(0)$$

Hence,  $r = 1$  and  $9\theta = 2n\pi$ , where  $n$  is an integer. This gives,

$$\theta = \frac{2n\pi}{9} \text{ so}$$

$$z = 1, \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{2\pi}{9}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{4\pi}{9}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{6\pi}{9}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm \frac{8\pi}{9}\right)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 9b \quad z^9 - 1 &= (z^9 + z^6 + z^3) - (z^6 + z^3 + 1) \\
 &= (z^3 - 1)(z^6 + z^3 + 1)
 \end{aligned}$$

Writing  $z^9 - 1$  as a product of factors gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 z^9 - 1 &= (z - 1) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{9}\right) \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{6\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{8\pi}{9}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{9}\right) \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(z - \operatorname{cis}(x))(z - \operatorname{cis}(-x)) \\
 &= (z^2 - z(\operatorname{cis}(x) + \operatorname{cis}(-x)) + (\operatorname{cis}(0))) \\
 &= z^2 - z(\cos x + i \sin x + \cos x - i \sin x) + 1 \\
 &= z^2 - 2z \cos x + 1
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 z^9 - 1 &= (z - 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{6\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &= (z - 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &= (z - 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &\quad (z^2 + z + 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (z - 1)(z^2 + z + 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \\
 &= (z^3 - 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence using the result at the start of this question we have,

$$z^6 + z^3 + 1 = \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right)$$

9c  $z^6 + z^3 + 1 = \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + 1 \right)$

Dividing both sides by  $z^3$  gives,

$$\begin{aligned}
 z^3 + 1 + z^{-3} &= \left( z - 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + z^{-1} \right) \left( z - 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + z^{-1} \right) \left( z - 2 \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} + z^{-1} \right) \\
 z^3 + z^{-3} + 1 &= \left( z + z^{-1} - 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} \right) \left( z + z^{-1} - 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} \right) \left( z + z^{-1} - 2 \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 &z^n + z^{-n} \\
 &= \operatorname{cis}(n\theta) + \operatorname{cis}(-n\theta) \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the equation above becomes

$$2 \cos 3\theta + 1 = 8 \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} \right) \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} \right) \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} \right)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10a  $\omega = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{9}\right)$

Let  $z = \omega^k$  then

$$\begin{aligned} z^9 &= (\omega^k)^9 \\ &= (\omega^9)^k \\ &= \left(\left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{9}\right)\right)^9\right)^k \\ &= (\text{cis}(2\pi))^k \\ &= (1)^k \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

10b  $(\omega - 1)(1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8 + \omega^9 \\ &\quad - (1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8) \\ &= \omega^9 - 1 \end{aligned}$$

Hence the equation

$$(\omega - 1)(1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8) = 0$$

has the same roots as  $\omega^9 - 1 = 0$  which are the ninth roots of unity.

Hence, since  $\omega = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{9}\right) \neq 1$  is a ninth root of unity we have,

$$1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8 = 0$$

and so

$$\omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8 = -1$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10c Now using the result of part b we have,

$$\begin{aligned}
 -1 &= \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right) + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^2 + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^3 + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^4 + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^5 \\
 &\quad + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^6 + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^7 + \left(\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9}\right)^8 \\
 -1 &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{4\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{6\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{8\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{10\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{12\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{14\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{16\pi}{9} \\
 -1 &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{4\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{6\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{8\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{10\pi}{9} - 2\pi\right) + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{12\pi}{9} - 2\pi\right) \\
 &\quad + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{14\pi}{9} - 2\pi\right) + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{16\pi}{9} - 2\pi\right) \\
 -1 &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{4\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{6\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \frac{8\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-8\pi}{9}\right) + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-6\pi}{9}\right) \\
 &\quad + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-4\pi}{9}\right) + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-2\pi}{9}\right) \\
 -1 &= \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-2\pi}{9}\right) + \operatorname{cis} \frac{4\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-4\pi}{9}\right) + \operatorname{cis} \frac{6\pi}{9} \\
 &\quad + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-6\pi}{9}\right) + \operatorname{cis} \frac{8\pi}{9} + \operatorname{cis} \left(\frac{-8\pi}{9}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Using the result  $\operatorname{cis}(x) + \operatorname{cis}(-x) = 2 \cos x$ , the above equation becomes

$$2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} - 1 + 2 \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} = -1$$

$$2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} + 2 \cos \frac{8\pi}{9} = 0$$

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} - \cos \left(\pi - \frac{8\pi}{9}\right) = 0$$

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} - \cos \frac{\pi}{9} = 0$$

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} = \cos \frac{\pi}{9}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10d Using the result of part c

$$\begin{aligned} & \cos \frac{\pi}{9} \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} \\ &= \left( \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} \right) \left( \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Using the result  $\operatorname{cis}(x) + \operatorname{cis}(-x) = 2 \cos x$ , we can rewrite this in terms of  $\omega$  as

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{8} \left( \omega + \frac{1}{\omega} + \omega^2 + \frac{1}{\omega^2} \right) \left( \left( \omega + \frac{1}{\omega} \right) \left( \omega^2 + \frac{1}{\omega^2} \right) \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{8} \left( \omega^2 + 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{\omega^2} + \omega^3 + \omega + \frac{1}{\omega} + \frac{1}{\omega^3} \right) \left( \omega^2 + \frac{1}{\omega^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{8} \left( \omega^4 + 1 + 2\omega^2 + \frac{2}{\omega^2} + 1 + \frac{1}{\omega^4} + \omega^5 + \omega + \omega^3 + \frac{1}{\omega} + \omega + \frac{1}{\omega^3} + \frac{1}{\omega} + \frac{1}{\omega^5} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{8} \left( \left( \frac{1}{\omega^3} + \frac{1}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{\omega} + 1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \left( \frac{1}{\omega^5} + \frac{1}{\omega^4} + \frac{1}{\omega^3} + \frac{1}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{\omega} + 1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 \right) - \left( \omega^3 + \frac{1}{\omega^3} \right) \right) \end{aligned}$$

Now, using the result from part b, we have that

$$1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7 + \omega^8 = 0$$

Dividing this equation by  $\omega^3$  gives

$$\frac{1}{\omega^3} + \frac{1}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{\omega} + 1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 = 0$$

And dividing it by  $\omega^5$  gives

$$\frac{1}{\omega^5} + \frac{1}{\omega^4} + \frac{1}{\omega^3} + \frac{1}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{\omega} + 1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \omega^3 = 0$$

Finally,

$$\omega^3 + \frac{1}{\omega^3} = 2 \cos \frac{6\pi}{9} = 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{3} = -1$$

Subbing all of this into above gives,

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{9} \cos \frac{2\pi}{9} \cos \frac{4\pi}{9} = \frac{1}{8} (0 + 0 - (-1)) = \frac{1}{8}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 11a \quad \rho^7 &= \left( \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{7} \right)^7 \\
 &= \left( \text{cis} \frac{2\pi}{7} \right)^7 \\
 &= \text{cis}(2\pi) \\
 &= 1
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\rho^7 - 1 = 0$ , factorising gives

$$(\rho - 1)(1 + \rho + \rho^2 + \cdots + \rho^6) = 0$$

Since  $\rho \neq 1$ ,

$$(1 + \rho + \rho^2 + \cdots + \rho^6) = 0$$

- 11b Since the equation has real coefficients, and  $\alpha$  is complex, the complex conjugate must also be a root. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 \beta &= \overline{\alpha} \\
 &= \overline{\rho + \rho^2 + \rho^4} \\
 &= \overline{\rho} + \overline{\rho^2} + \overline{\rho^4} \\
 &= \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)} + \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)^2} + \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)^4} \\
 &= \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)} + \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right)} + \overline{\text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right)} \\
 &= \text{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(-\frac{8\pi}{7}\right) \\
 &= \text{cis}\left(2\pi - \frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(2\pi - \frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(2\pi - \frac{8\pi}{7}\right) \\
 &= \text{cis}\left(\frac{12\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(\frac{10\pi}{7}\right) + \text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{7}\right) \\
 &= \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)^6 + \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)^5 + \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right)^3 \\
 &= \rho^6 + \rho^5 + \rho^3
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{So } \beta = \rho^3 + \rho^5 + \rho^6$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11c Using the sum of roots we have,

$$\alpha + \beta = -a$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} a &= -(\alpha + \beta) \\ &= -(\rho + \rho^2 + \rho^4 + \rho^3 + \rho^5 + \rho^6) \\ &= -(-1) \text{ (from part b)} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Using the product of roots,

$$\alpha\beta = b$$

$$\begin{aligned} b &= \alpha\beta \\ &= (\rho + \rho^2 + \rho^4)(\rho^3 + \rho^5 + \rho^6) \\ &= \rho^4 + \rho^6 + \rho^7 + \rho^5 + \rho^7 + \rho^8 + \rho^7 + \rho^9 + \rho^{10} \\ &= \rho^4 + \rho^6 + 1 + \rho^5 + 1 + \rho + 1 + \rho^2 + \rho^3 \text{ (since } \rho^7 = 1) \\ &= 3 + \rho + \rho^2 + \rho^4 + \rho^3 + \rho^5 + \rho^6 \\ &= 3 + (-1) \text{ (from part b)} \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

- 11d From part c we know that at the root  $\alpha$  the polynomial has the form  $\alpha^2 + \alpha + 2 = 0$ . Solving for  $\alpha$  gives

$$\alpha = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1-8}}{2} = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{-7}}{2} = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{7}i}{2}$$

Also we have

$$\alpha$$

$$= \rho + \rho^2 + \rho^4$$

$$= \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$= \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right)$$

Equating real and imaginary parts in the expressions for  $\alpha$ , we have

$$\pm \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{8\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\pm \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\pi - \frac{4\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\pi - \frac{8\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\pm \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$$

$$\pm \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$$

Now because  $\sin$  is an increasing function in the first quadrant, we have  $\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) > \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$ . Hence,  $\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right) > 0$  and as such we find

$$\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3C Enrichment questions

12ai  $\text{cis } 4\theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \text{cis } \theta^4 \quad (\text{By de Moivre}) \\
 &= \cos^4 \theta + 4i \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta - 4i \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta + \sin^4 \theta \\
 &\text{Equating real and imaginary parts:} \\
 \cos 4\theta &= \cos^4 \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta \\
 \sin 4\theta &= 4 \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

12aii So for  $\cos 4\theta \neq 0$  we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\tan \theta \\
 &= \frac{4 \cos^3 \theta \sin \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin^3 \theta}{\cos^4 \theta - 6 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta + \sin^4 \theta} \times \frac{\frac{1}{\cos^4 \theta}}{\frac{1}{\cos^4 \theta}} \quad (\cos \theta \neq 0) \\
 &= \frac{4 \tan \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 6 \tan^2 \theta + \tan^4 \theta}
 \end{aligned}$$

12aiii Let  $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$ , then  $\tan \theta = \frac{1}{3}$  and taking  $\tan$  of the RHS of the equation gives,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\tan \left( 4 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} \right) \\
 &= \tan 4\theta \\
 &= \frac{4 \tan \theta - 4 \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 6 \tan^2 \theta + \tan^4 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{4 \cdot \frac{1}{3} - 4 \cdot \frac{1}{27}}{1 - 6 \cdot \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{81}} \times \frac{81}{81} \\
 &= \frac{108 - 12}{81 - 54 + 1} \\
 &= \frac{24}{7}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking the inverse then gives  $4 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = \tan^{-1} \frac{24}{7}$ .

Note:  $\theta < \frac{\pi}{4}$  ( $\tan \theta = \frac{1}{3}$ ) and  $\tan 4\theta > 0$ , so all angles are in the first quadrant.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12b Let  $z$  be a fourth root, then  $iz$ ,  $-z$ ,  $-iz$  are also fourth roots.

Now let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$ , where  $\theta$  is acute. Then,

$$r^4 \operatorname{cis} 4\theta = 7 + 24i = 25 \left( \frac{7}{25} + \frac{24}{25} i \right)$$

$$\text{Hence, } r^4 = 25, \text{ i.e., } r = \sqrt{5}, \text{ and } \tan 4\theta = \frac{24}{7}, \text{ i.e. } 4\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{24}{7}$$

It follows from part a that  $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$ .

Hence,  $z = \sqrt{5} (\operatorname{cis} \theta)$ , where  $\theta$  is acute and  $\tan \theta = \frac{1}{3}$ .

Thus, using Pythagoras the diagonal of the right angle formed by  $\theta$  is  $\sqrt{10}$ , and we can calculate  $\sin \theta$  and  $\cos \theta$ , giving

$$\begin{aligned} z &= \sqrt{5} \left( \frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} + i \frac{1}{\sqrt{10}} \right) \\ &= \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (3 + i) \end{aligned}$$

The other roots are then:

$$\begin{aligned} iz &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (-1 + 3i) \\ -z &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (3 + i) \\ -iz &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (1 - 3i) \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13a The LHS is a 7<sup>th</sup> degree polynomial, so there should be 7 roots.

Clearly  $z = 0$  is not a solution of  $(z + 1)^8 - z^8 = 0$ .

Dividing by  $z$  then gives

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{z}\right)^8 - 1 = 0$$

Or  $w^8 - 1 = 0$ , where  $w = 1 + \frac{1}{z}$ , excluding  $w = 1$  since  $z$  is undefined there.

Let  $w = \text{cis } \theta$  and  $1 = \text{cis } 2k\pi$ , for  $k$  an integer, then

$$\text{cis } 8\theta = \text{cis } 2k\pi$$

So,

$$\theta = \frac{k\pi}{4}, k = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, 4 \quad (k \neq 0, \text{ since } w \neq 1)$$

Thus,

$$1 + \frac{1}{z} = \text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{4}$$

Or,

$$z = \frac{1}{\text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{4} - 1} \times \frac{\overline{\text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{4}}}{\overline{\text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{4}}} \quad (\text{Noting the half angle in the given roots})$$

$$z = \frac{\cos \frac{k\pi}{8} - i \sin \frac{k\pi}{8}}{\text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{8} - \overline{\text{cis } \frac{k\pi}{8}}}$$

$$z = \frac{\cos \frac{k\pi}{8} - i \sin \frac{k\pi}{8}}{2i \sin \frac{k\pi}{8}}$$

$$z = -\frac{1}{2} \left( i \cot \frac{k\pi}{8} + 1 \right) \quad k = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, 4$$

Thus, we have

$$z = -\frac{1}{2} \quad (\text{for } k = 4)$$

or

$$z = -\frac{1}{2} \left( 1 \pm i \cot \frac{k\pi}{8} \right) \quad k = 1, 2, 3 \quad (\text{since } \cot \text{ is odd})$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13b By the factor theorem for polynomials, and the roots of part a,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (z + 1)^8 - z^8 \\
 &= 8 \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + i \cot \frac{\pi}{8} \right) \right) \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - i \cot \frac{\pi}{8} \right) \right) \\
 &\quad \times \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + i \cot \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right) \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - i \cot \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right) \\
 &\quad \times \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + i \cot \frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \right) \left( z + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - i \cot \frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \right) \\
 &= 4(2z + 1) \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{4} \left( 1 + \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right) \right) \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{4} \left( 1 + \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right) \\
 &\quad \times \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{4} \left( 1 + \cot^2 \frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \right) \quad (*) \\
 &= 4(2z + 1) \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{4} \csc^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right) \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( z^2 + z + \frac{1}{4} \left( 1 + \csc^2 \frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{8} (2z + 1) \left( 4z^2 + 4z + \csc^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right) (2z^2 + 2z + 1) \left( 4z^2 + 4z + \csc^2 \frac{3\pi}{8} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

13c

Sub  $\left( z + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{\cos 2\theta}{2}$  into (\*) above to get:

RHS (\*)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 4 \cos 2\theta \left( \frac{\cos^2 2\theta}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right) \left( \frac{\cos^2 2\theta}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \left( \frac{\cos^2 2\theta}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \cot^2 \frac{3\pi}{8} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{16} \cos 2\theta \left( \cos^2 2\theta + \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right) (\cos^2 2\theta + 1) \left( \cos^2 2\theta + \cot^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Then we have.

LHS (\*)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( \frac{\cos 2\theta}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \right)^8 - \left( \frac{\cos 2\theta}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right)^8 \\
 &= (\cos^2 \theta)^8 - (\sin^2 \theta)^8 \quad (\text{double angle formulae}) \\
 &= \cos^{16} \theta - \sin^{16} \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14  $w^3 = 1, w \neq 1$ , so  $w = \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}$  or  $\overline{\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}}$

Note: the conjugate roots since the polynomial equation has real roots.

For  $w = \operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}$ , suppose  $w^k = 1$ , then  $\operatorname{cis} \frac{2k\pi}{3} = 1$ . (by De Moivre)

So  $\operatorname{cis} \frac{2k\pi}{3}$  is a multiple of  $2\pi$ .

Hence,  $k$  is a multiple of 3.

Likewise, for  $w = \overline{\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3}}$ .

14a If  $w^3 = 1$  it follows that  $(w^3)^k = 1$ .

Hence,  $(w^k)^3 - 1 = 0$  or  $(w^k - 1)(w^{2k} + w^k + 1) = 0$ .

Either  $w^k - 1 = 0$ , in which case  $k$  is a multiple of 3. And,

$$\begin{aligned} w^{2k} + w^k + 1 \\ &= (w^k)^2 + (w^k) + 1 \\ &= 1 + 1 + 1 \\ &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

Or

$$w^{2k} + w^k + 1 = 0$$

in which case  $k$  is not a multiple of 3.

Thus,

$$w^{2k} + w^k + 1 = 3 \text{ if } k \text{ is a multiple of 3 and } = 0 \text{ otherwise.}$$

14b

$$(1 + w)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n {}^nC_r w^r \text{ and } (1 + w^2)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n {}^nC_r w^{2r}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14c RHS

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + (1 + w)^n + (1 + w^2)^n) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3}((1 + 1)^n + (1 + w)^n + (1 + w^2)^n) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{r=0}^n ({}^nC_r + {}^nC_r w^r + {}^nC_r w^{2r}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{r=0}^n {}^nC_r (1 + w^r + w^{2r}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} ({}^nC_0 \cdot 3 + {}^nC_3 \cdot 3 + {}^nC_6 \cdot 3 + \cdots + {}^nC_{3l} \cdot 3) \quad (\text{All other terms zero by part a.}) \\
 &= {}^nC_0 + {}^nC_3 + {}^nC_6 + \cdots + {}^nC_{3l} \\
 &= \text{LHS}
 \end{aligned}$$

14d Since  $n$  is a multiple of 6,  $3l = n$  with  $l$  even. From part c we have,

$${}^nC_0 + {}^nC_3 + {}^nC_6 + \cdots + {}^nC_n = \frac{1}{3}(2^n + (1 + w)^n + (1 + w^2)^n) \quad (*)$$

Let  $k = 1$  in  $1 + w^k + w^{2k}$ , to give,

$$1 + w + w^2 = 0 \quad (\text{By part a.})$$

$$\text{Hence, } 1 + w = -w^2 \text{ and } 1 + w^2 = -w$$

Thus, RHS of  $(*)$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + (-w^2)^n + (-w)^n) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + (w^n)^2 + w^n) \quad (\text{Since } n \text{ is even.}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + (w^{2n} + w^n + 1) - 1) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 3 - 1) \quad (\text{By part a, since } n \text{ is a multiple of 3.}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 2)
 \end{aligned}$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$15a \quad (z + 1)^{2n} + (z - 1)^{2n} = 0$$

So,  $z \neq 1, -1$ . Hence, by rearranging,

$$\left( \frac{z + 1}{z - 1} \right)^{2n} = -1 = \text{cis } (2k + 1)\pi, \quad \text{for integer } k$$

Thus, by de Moivre,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{z + 1}{z - 1} &= \text{cis } \frac{(2k + 1)\pi}{2n} \\ &= \text{cis } 2\alpha, \text{ where } \alpha = \frac{(2k + 1)\pi}{4n} \end{aligned}$$

Also, for principal values  $-\pi < \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2n} \leq \pi$ . Hence,

$$-2n < 2k + 1 \leq 2n$$

$$-2n - 1 < 2k \leq 2n - 1$$

Hence,

$$-n - \frac{1}{2} < k \leq n - \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad -n \leq k \leq n - 1$$

Now,

$$z + 1 = (z - 1)\text{cis } 2\alpha$$

or

$$z(\text{cis } 2\alpha - 1) = \text{cis } 2\alpha + 1$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} z &= \frac{\text{cis } 2\alpha + 1}{\text{cis } 2\alpha - 1} \\ &= \frac{\text{cis } 2\alpha + 1}{\text{cis } 2\alpha - 1} \times \frac{\overline{\text{cis } \alpha}}{\overline{\text{cis } \alpha}} \quad (\text{Using the half angle result.}) \\ &= \frac{\text{cis } \alpha + \overline{\text{cis } \alpha}}{\text{cis } \alpha - \overline{\text{cis } \alpha}} \quad (\text{See also Exercise 3A, Q18 and Exercise 3C, Q13.}) \\ &= \frac{2 \cos \alpha}{2i \sin \alpha} \\ &= -i \cot \alpha \end{aligned}$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$= -i \cot \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{4n}, -n \leq k \leq n-1$$

Writing these in conjugate pairs (a polynomial equation with real coefficients):

$$z = -i \cot \frac{\pi}{4n}, i \cot \frac{\pi}{4n}, -i \cot \frac{3\pi}{4n}, i \cot \frac{3\pi}{4n}, \dots, -i \cot \frac{(2n-1)\pi}{4n}, i \cot \frac{(2n-1)\pi}{4n}$$

$$(k=0) \quad (k=-1) \quad (k=1) \quad (k=-2) \quad (k=n-1) \quad (k=-n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 15b \quad OP_1^2 + OP_2^2 + \dots + OP_{2n}^2 \\ &= |z_1|^2 + |z_2|^2 + \dots + |z_{2n}|^2 \\ &= |z_1|^2 + |z_2|^2 + \dots + |z_{2n}|^2 \\ &= -z_1^2 - z_2^2 + \dots - z_{2n}^2 \quad (\text{Since each root is imaginary.}) \\ &= -(z_1^2 + z_2^2 + \dots + z_{2n}^2) \end{aligned}$$

Which is the opposite of the sum of squares of roots.

Now, (sum of square roots) = (sum of square roots)<sup>2</sup> - 2(sum of roots in pairs)

$$\text{Also, } (z+1)^{2n} + (z-1)^{2n} = 0$$

Hence, the leading terms are:

$$z^{2n} + {}^{2n}C_1 z^{2n-1} + {}^{2n}C_2 z^{2n-2} + \dots + 1 + z^{2n} - {}^{2n}C_1 z^{2n-1} + {}^{2n}C_2 z^{2n-2} + \dots + 1 = 0$$

Cancelling opposite terms and dividing by 2, gives

$$z^{2n} + {}^{2n}C_2 z^{2n-2} + \dots + 1 = 0$$

Hence, looking at the above polynomial we see that the sum of the roots = 0 and the sum of the roots in pairs =  ${}^{2n}C_2$ .

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} OP_1^2 + OP_2^2 + \dots + OP_{2n}^2 \\ &= 0^2 - 2 \cdot {}^{2n}C_2 \\ &= 2 \cdot \frac{(2n)!}{(2n-2)! \cdot 2!} \\ &= 2n(2n-1) \end{aligned}$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

#### Solutions to Exercise 3D Foundation questions

$$1a \quad (e^{i\theta})^3 = e^{i\theta \times 3} = e^{3i\theta}$$

$$1b \quad (e^{-i\theta})^6 = e^{-i\theta \times 6} = e^{-6i\theta}$$

$$1c \quad (e^{2i\theta})^4 = e^{2i\theta \times 4} = e^{8i\theta}$$

$$1d \quad (e^{-5i\theta})^{-2} = e^{-5i\theta \times -2} = e^{10i\theta}$$

$$2a \quad e^{i\theta} \times e^{-2i\theta} = e^{i\theta - 2i\theta} = e^{-i\theta}$$

2b

$$\frac{e^{6i\theta}}{e^{3i\theta}} = e^{6i\theta - 3i\theta} = e^{3i\theta}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2c \quad & (e^{4i\theta})^{-2} \times (e^{-2i\theta})^{-5} \\ &= e^{-8i\theta} \times e^{10i\theta} \\ &= e^{-8i\theta + 10i\theta} = e^{2i\theta} \end{aligned}$$

2d

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{(e^{2i\theta})^3 \times (e^{-3i\theta})^{-4}}{(e^{-i\theta})^2} \\ &= \frac{e^{6i\theta} \times e^{12i\theta}}{e^{-2i\theta}} \\ &= \frac{e^{6i\theta + 12i\theta}}{e^{-2i\theta}} \\ &= \frac{e^{18i\theta}}{e^{-2i\theta}} \\ &= e^{18i\theta - (-2i\theta)} \\ &= e^{20i\theta} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$3a \quad 2i = 2e^{\frac{\pi}{2}i} \text{ (note that } i = e^{\frac{\pi}{2}i}\text{)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3b \quad 1 + i &= \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} e^{i \times \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1}} \\ &= \sqrt{2} e^{i \frac{\pi}{4}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3c \quad -6 &= \sqrt{0^2 + (-6)^2} e^{i(\pi - \tan^{-1} \frac{0}{6})} \\ &= 6e^{i\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3d \quad -1 + \sqrt{3}i &= \sqrt{(-1)^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} e^{i(\pi - \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1})} \\ &= 2e^{\frac{2i\pi}{3}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3e \quad -3 - 3i &= \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-3)^2} e^{i(-\pi + \tan^{-1} \frac{3}{3})} \\ &= \sqrt{18} e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}} \\ &= 3\sqrt{2} e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3f \quad 2\sqrt{3} - 2i &= \sqrt{(2\sqrt{3})^2 + (-2)^2} e^{i \tan^{-1}(-\frac{2}{2\sqrt{3}})} \\ &= \sqrt{16} e^{-\frac{i\pi}{6}} \\ &= 4e^{-\frac{i\pi}{6}} \end{aligned}$$

## Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

4a  $5e^{i\pi}$

$$= 5(\cos \pi + i \sin \pi)$$

$$= 5(-1 + 0i)$$

$$= -5$$

4b

$$e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}$$

$$= \cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$$

4c

$$4e^{-\frac{i\pi}{2}}$$

$$= 4\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{2} - i \sin \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$= 4(0 - i)$$

$$= -4i$$

4d

$$2e^{\frac{5i\pi}{6}}$$

$$= 2\left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$$

$$= 2\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i\right)$$

$$= -\sqrt{3} + i$$



## Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}4e \quad & 2\sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}} \\&= 2\sqrt{2}\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{4} - i\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \\&= 2\sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \\&= 2 - 2i\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}4f \quad & 4\sqrt{3}e^{-\frac{2i\pi}{3}} \\&= 4\sqrt{3}\left(\cos\frac{2\pi}{3} - i\sin\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\&= 4\sqrt{3}\left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) \\&= -2\sqrt{3} - 6i\end{aligned}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3D Development questions

$$\begin{aligned}
 5a \quad zw &= (1 + \sqrt{3}i)(1 - i) \\
 &= \left(2e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}}\right)\left(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right) \\
 &= 2\sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{\pi}{12}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 5b \quad \frac{w}{z} &= \frac{(1 - i)}{(1 + \sqrt{3}i)} \\
 &= \frac{(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}})}{(2e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}})} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{12}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 5c \quad z^3w &= (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^3(1 - i) \\
 &= \left(2e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}}\right)^3\left(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right) \\
 &= 8e^{i\pi}\left(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right) \\
 &= 8\sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{3\pi}{4}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 5d \quad \frac{z^2}{w} &= \frac{(1 + \sqrt{3}i)^2}{(1 - i)} \\
 &= \frac{\left(2e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}}\right)^2}{(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}})} \\
 &= \frac{4e^{i\frac{2\pi}{3}}}{(\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}})} \\
 &= 2\sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{11\pi}{12}}
 \end{aligned}$$

## Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}6a \quad & (\sqrt{3} + i)^6 \\&= \left(2e^{i\frac{\pi}{6}}\right)^6 \\&= (2)^6 e^{i\pi} \\&= 2^6(-1) \\&= -64\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}6b \quad & (-1 + i)^5 \\&= \left(\sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{3\pi}{4}}\right)^5 \\&= (\sqrt{2})^5 e^{i\frac{15\pi}{4}} \\&= (\sqrt{2})^4 \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}} \\&= (\sqrt{2})^4 (1 - i) \\&= 4 - 4i\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}6c \quad & \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)^{-8} \\&= \left(e^{-i\frac{\pi}{3}}\right)^{-8} \\&= e^{i\frac{8\pi}{3}} \\&= e^{i\frac{2\pi}{3}} \\&= -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 6d \quad & (-3 - 3\sqrt{3}i)^4 \\
 &= \left(6e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{3}}\right)^4 \\
 &= 1296 e^{-i\frac{8\pi}{3}} \\
 &= 1296 e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{3}} \\
 &= 1296 \left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right) \\
 &= -648 - 648\sqrt{3}i
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 7a \quad & z^{10} - w^{10} = 2i \\
 & \left(\frac{1+i}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^{10} - \left(\frac{1-i}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^{10} \\
 &= \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^{10} - \left(e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^{10} \\
 &= e^{i\frac{10\pi}{4}} - e^{-i\frac{10\pi}{4}} \\
 &= e^{i\frac{2\pi}{4}} - e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{4}} \\
 &= e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}} - e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}} \\
 &= i - (-i) \\
 &= 2i
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 7b \quad & 1 + z + z^2 + z^3 + z^4 \\
 &= 1 + \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right) + \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^2 + \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^3 + \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^4 \\
 &= 1 + e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}} + e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}} + e^{i\frac{3\pi}{4}} + e^{i\pi} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(1+i) + i + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-1+i) - 1 \\
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}i + i \\
 &= (\sqrt{2} + 1)i
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 8a \quad & (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^5 (1 - i)^4 + (1 - \sqrt{3}i)^5 (1 + i)^4 \\
 &= (2)^5 e^{i\frac{5\pi}{3}} (\sqrt{2})^4 e^{-i\frac{4\pi}{4}} + (2)^5 e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{3}} (\sqrt{2})^4 e^{i\frac{4\pi}{4}} \\
 &= 32e^{i(\frac{5\pi}{3}-2\pi)} (-4) + 32e^{-i(\frac{5\pi}{3}-2\pi)} (-4) \\
 &= 32e^{-i\frac{\pi}{3}} (-4) + 32e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}} (-4) \\
 &= -128e^{-i\frac{\pi}{3}} - 128e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}} \\
 &= -128 \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i + \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) \right) \\
 &= -128
 \end{aligned}$$

8b

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{(1 + \sqrt{3}i)^5}{(1 - i)^4} + \frac{(1 - \sqrt{3}i)^5}{(1 + i)^4} \\
 &= \frac{32e^{-i\frac{\pi}{3}}}{(-4)} + \frac{32e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}}}{(-4)} \quad (\text{Using the exponential forms found in part a}) \\
 &= 8e^{-i\frac{\pi}{3}} - 8e^{i\frac{\pi}{3}} \\
 &= -8 \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i + \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i \right) \right) \\
 &= -8
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 9a \quad & 1 + z^4 \\
 &= 1 + (e^{i\theta})^4 \\
 &= 1 + e^{4i\theta} \\
 &= 1 + \cos 4\theta + i \sin 4\theta \\
 &= 1 + (\cos^2 2\theta - \sin^2 2\theta) + i(2 \sin 2\theta \cos 2\theta) \\
 &= 1 - \sin^2 2\theta + \cos^2 2\theta + 2i \sin 2\theta \cos 2\theta \\
 &= \cos^2 2\theta + \cos^2 2\theta + 2i \sin \theta \cos \theta \\
 &= 2 \cos^2 2\theta + 2i \sin 2\theta \cos 2\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos 2\theta (\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta) \\
 &= 2 \cos 2\theta \operatorname{cis} 2\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 9b \quad & \frac{1 + z^4}{1 + z^{-4}} \\
 &= \frac{z^4(1 + z^4)}{z^4 + 1} \\
 &= z^4 \\
 &= (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^4 \\
 &= \operatorname{cis} 4\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 10a \quad & (1 - i)z^2 \\
 &= \left(\sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)(re^{i\theta})^2 \\
 &= \sqrt{2}r^2e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}e^{i2\theta} \\
 &= \sqrt{2}r^2e^{i(2\theta - \frac{\pi}{4})} \\
 &= \sqrt{2}r^2e^{i\frac{1}{4}(8\theta - \pi)}
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10b

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1 + \sqrt{3}i}{z} \\ &= \frac{2e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}}{re^{i\theta}} \\ &= \frac{2e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}e^{-i\theta}}{r} \\ &= \frac{2e^{i(\frac{\pi}{3}-\theta)}}{r} \\ &= \frac{2e^{\frac{1}{3}i(\pi-3\theta)}}{r} \end{aligned}$$

11a  $(1 + i)^n$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left(\sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)^n \\ &= (\sqrt{2})^n e^{i\frac{n\pi}{4}} \end{aligned}$$

This is real when the imaginary part of the exponent is a multiple of  $2\lambda\pi$  or  $2\lambda\pi \pm \pi$ , that is, when  $\frac{n\pi}{4} = 2\pi\lambda \pm \pi$  or  $2\lambda\pi$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer.

So  $n = 8\lambda \pm 4$  or  $8\lambda$ . Hence  $n = 0, 4, 8 \dots$

Therefore  $(1 + i)^n$  is real when  $n$  is divisible by 4.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11b  $(1 - i)^n$

$$= \left( \sqrt{2} e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}} \right)^n$$

$$= (\sqrt{2})^n e^{-i\frac{n\pi}{4}}$$

This is purely imaginary when the imaginary part of the exponent is of the form  $2\lambda\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer, that is, when  $-\frac{n\pi}{4} = 2\lambda\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer. So,

$$n\pi = -4 \left( 2\lambda\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$$

Absorbing the minus sign into  $\lambda$  then gives,

$$n = 8\lambda \pm 2 \text{ where } \lambda \text{ is an integer}$$

Hence the positive values of  $n$  are  $n = 2, 6, 10 \dots$

11c  $(\sqrt{3} - i)^n$

$$= \left( 2e^{-i\frac{\pi}{6}} \right)^n$$

$$= 2^n e^{-\frac{in\pi}{6}}$$

This is real when the imaginary part of the exponent is a multiple of  $2\lambda\pi$  or  $2\lambda\pi \pm \pi$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer, that is, when  $-\frac{n\pi}{6} = 2\lambda\pi \pm \pi$  or  $2\lambda\pi$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer. Hence,

$$n = -6(2\lambda \pm 1) \text{ or } n = -12\lambda$$

Absorbing the minus signs into  $\lambda$  we that the positive values of  $n$  are,

$$n = 0, 6, 12, 18, \dots$$

That is,  $n$  is divisible by 6.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 11d \quad & (1 + \sqrt{3}i)^n \\
 &= \left(2e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right)^n \\
 &= 2^n e^{\frac{in\pi}{3}}
 \end{aligned}$$

This is purely imaginary when the imaginary part of the exponent is of the form  $2\lambda\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer, that is, when  $\frac{n\pi}{3} = 2\pi\lambda \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $\lambda$  is an integer.

So,

$$n = 3\left(2\lambda \pm \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

Hence, the positive values of  $n$  are,

$$n = \frac{3}{2}, \frac{9}{2}, \frac{15}{2}, \dots$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 12a \text{ i} \quad & e^{ni\theta} + e^{-ni\theta} \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 12a \text{ ii} \quad & e^{ni\theta} - e^{-ni\theta} \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - (\cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta) \\
 &= 2i \sin n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 12b \text{ i} \quad & \text{Using part a ii with } n = 3 \\
 & e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta} = 2i \sin 3\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 12b \text{ ii} \quad & \text{Using part a i with } n = 1 \\
 & (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})^2 \\
 &= (2 \cos \theta)^2 \\
 &= 4 \cos^2 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12biii Using part a ii with  $n = 1$

$$\begin{aligned}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})^3 \\&= (2i \sin \theta)^3 \\&= -8i \sin^3 \theta\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}12b \text{ iv } e^{2i\theta} + e^{i\theta} + 2 + e^{-i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta} \\&= (e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta}) + (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}) + 2 \\&= 2 \cos 2\theta + 2 \cos \theta + 2 \text{ (Using part a i)} \\&= 2(2 \cos^2 \theta - 1) + 2 \cos \theta + 2 \\&= 4 \cos^2 \theta + 2 \cos \theta \\&= 2 \cos \theta (2 \cos \theta + 1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}12v \quad e^{3i\theta} - e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta} \\&= (e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta}) - (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \\&= 2i \sin 3\theta - 2i \sin \theta \text{ (Using part a ii)}\end{aligned}$$

13a Using question 12a i with  $n = 1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta} &= 2 \cos \theta \\ \cos \theta &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}13b \quad \cos(-\theta) \\&= \frac{1}{2}(e^{-i\theta} + e^{-(-i\theta)}) \\&= \frac{1}{2}(e^{-i\theta} + e^{i\theta}) \\&= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}) \\&= \cos \theta\end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\cos \theta$  is an even function.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13c Using 12a ii as we did in part a, we have

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})$$

Hence

$$\sin(-\theta)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{-i\theta} - e^{-(-i\theta)})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{-i\theta} - e^{i\theta})$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})$$

$$= -\sin \theta$$

Hence  $\sin \theta$  is an odd function.

13d

$$\tan(-\theta) = \frac{\sin(-\theta)}{\cos(-\theta)} = \frac{-\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = -\tan \theta$$

Hence  $\tan \theta$  is an odd function.

$$\cot(-\theta) = \frac{1}{\tan(-\theta)} = \frac{1}{-\tan \theta} = -\cot \theta$$

Hence  $\cot \theta$  is an odd function.

$$\sec(-\theta) = \frac{1}{\cos(-\theta)} = \frac{1}{\cos \theta} = \sec \theta$$

Hence  $\sec \theta$  is an even function.

$$\operatorname{cosec}(-\theta) = \frac{1}{\sin(-\theta)} = \frac{1}{-\sin \theta} = -\operatorname{cosec} \theta$$

Hence  $\operatorname{cosec} \theta$  is an odd function.

14a

$$\left(z + 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{2}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{2}}\right)$$

$$= z^2 - \left(2e^{\frac{i\pi}{2}}\right)^2$$

$$= z^2 - 4e^{i\pi}$$

$$= z^2 + 4$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14b

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left(z - e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right)\left(z - e^{-\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right) \\
 &= z^2 - ze^{-\frac{i\pi}{3}} - ze^{\frac{i\pi}{3}} + \left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right)\left(e^{-\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right) \\
 &= z^2 - z\left(e^{-\frac{i\pi}{3}} + e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right) + e^0 \\
 &= z^2 - z\left(2\cos\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 1 \\
 &= z^2 - 2z\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + 1 \\
 &= z^2 - z + 1
 \end{aligned}$$

14c

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (z + 2)\left(z - 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{-\frac{i\pi}{3}}\right) \\
 &= (z + 2)(z^2 - 2z + 4) \text{ (Using the result of part b)} \\
 &= z^3 + 8
 \end{aligned}$$

14d

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left(z - \sqrt{2}e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - \sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - \sqrt{2}e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - \sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right) \\
 &= \left(z^2 - z\sqrt{2}\left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}} + e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right) + \left(-\sqrt{2}e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(-\sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\right) \\
 & \quad \left(z^2 - z\sqrt{2}\left(e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}} + e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right) + \left(-\sqrt{2}e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(-\sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)\right) \\
 &= \left(z^2 - 2\sqrt{2}z\cos\frac{\pi}{4} + 2\right)\left(z^2 - 2\sqrt{2}z\cos\frac{3\pi}{4} + 2\right) \\
 &= \left(z^2 - z2\sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + 2\right)\left(z^2 - z2\sqrt{2}\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + 2\right) \\
 &= (z^2 - 2z + 2)(z^2 + 2z + 2) \\
 &= z^4 + 2z^3 + 2z^2 - 2z^3 - 4z^2 - 4z + 2z^2 + 4z + 4 \\
 &= z^4 + 4
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

15a  $re^{i\theta} = se^{i\phi}$

$$|re^{i\theta}| = |se^{i\phi}|$$

$$|r||e^{i\theta}| = |s||e^{i\phi}|$$

$$|r|(1) = |s|(1)$$

$$|r| = |s|$$

And since  $r > 0$  and  $s > 0$ ,

$$r = s$$

15b  $re^{i\theta} = se^{i\phi}$

Since  $r = s$ ,

$$e^{i\theta} = e^{i\phi}$$

$$\frac{e^{i\theta}}{e^{i\phi}} = 1$$

$$e^{i(\theta-\phi)} = 1 \quad (1)$$

Since  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  are principle values we have by definition that,  $-\pi < \phi, \theta \leq \pi$ .

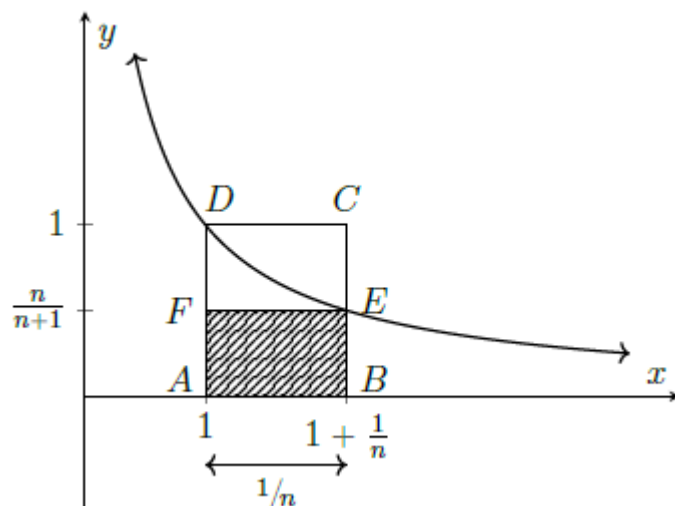
Thus,  $\phi - \theta < \pi - (-\pi) < 2\pi$  and  $\phi - \theta > -\pi - \pi > -2\pi$ .

Hence  $-2\pi < \phi - \theta < 2\pi$  and within this range to satisfy (1) we have,  $\theta - \phi = 0$  and so  $\theta = \phi$ .

- 15c If two complex numbers are equal, then they represent the same point in the Argand diagram. Hence the moduli are equal, and because the principal argument is unique between  $-\pi$  and  $\pi$  it must also be equal.

### Solutions to Exercise 3D Enrichment questions

16a



First note from the diagram that,  $\text{Area ABEF} \leq \text{area under curve} \leq \text{area ABCD}$ .  
Thus,

$$\frac{n}{1+n} \times \frac{1}{n} \leq \int_1^{1+\frac{1}{n}} \frac{1}{x} dx \leq 1 \times \frac{1}{n}$$

$$\frac{1}{1+n} \leq [\log x]_1^{1+\frac{1}{n}} \leq \frac{1}{n}$$

$$\frac{1}{1+n} \leq \log\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) - \log 1 \leq \frac{1}{n}$$

But  $\log 1 = 0$ , hence,

$$\frac{1}{1+n} \leq \log\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) \leq \frac{1}{n}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

16b Since  $n$  is a positive integer we can multiply through by it to give,

$$\frac{n}{1+n} \leq \log \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n \leq 1 \text{ (By the log laws.)}$$

Taking exponentials of each part:

$$e^{\frac{n}{1+n}} \leq \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n \leq e^{(*)}$$

Then take the limit as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} e^{\frac{n}{n+1}} \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n \leq e$$

$$e \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n \leq e$$

$$\text{Hence, } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n = e$$

16c In  $(*)$  of part b, replace  $n$  with  $\frac{n}{x}$  then,

$$e^{\frac{n}{x+n}} \leq \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^{\frac{n}{x}} \leq e$$

Raise to the power of  $x$ :

$$\left( e^{\frac{n}{x+n}} \right)^x \leq \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^n \leq e^x$$

Once again, take the limit as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

$$e^x \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^n \leq e^x$$

$$\text{That is, } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{x}{n} \right)^n = e^x$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17a  $e^t \geq 1$  for  $0 \leq t \leq x$ , and so,

$$\int_0^x e^t dt \geq \int_0^x 1 dt$$

$$[e^t]_0^x \geq [1]_0^x$$

$$e^x - 1 \geq x$$

$$\text{Hence, } e^x \geq 1 + x$$

17b From part a,  $e^t \geq 1 + t$  for  $0 \leq t \leq x$ , as such

$$\int_0^x e^t dt \geq \int_0^x 1 + t dt$$

$$e^x - 1 \geq x + \frac{x^2}{2}$$

Hence,

$$e^x \geq 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2}$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17c Induction is useful here, with step A done above.

B: Assume that the result is true for  $n = k$ , that is, assume that:

$$e^x \geq \sum_{n=0}^k \frac{x^n}{n!} (*)$$

Now prove the result true for  $n = k + 1$ , that is:

$$e^x \geq \sum_{n=0}^{k+1} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

Let  $x = t$  in  $(*)$  and integrate from 0 to  $x$  to get:

$$\int_0^x e^t dt \geq \int_0^x \sum_{n=0}^k \frac{t^n}{n!} dt$$

$$[e^t]_0^x \geq \left[ \sum_{n=0}^k \frac{t^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \right]_0^x$$

$$e^x - 1 \geq \sum_{n=0}^k \frac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} - 0$$

$$e^x \geq 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{k+1} \frac{x^n}{n!} \text{ (Replacing } n+1 \text{ with } n)$$

$$e^x \geq \sum_{n=0}^{k+1} \frac{x^n}{n!} \text{ (Since } 1 = \frac{(x)^0}{0!}, x \neq 0$$

C: From parts A and B, by mathematical induction, the result is true for all  $m$ ; viz

$$e^x \geq \sum_{n=0}^m \frac{x^n}{n!}, \text{ and taking the limit as } m \rightarrow \infty, \text{ gives}$$

$$e^x \geq 1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17d

$$E(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

Let  $h(x) = e^{-x} \cdot E(x)$ , then we have,

$$h'(x) = -e^{-x} \cdot E(x) + e^{-x} \cdot E'(x)$$

Now let,  $E_m(x) = \sum_{n=0}^m \frac{x^n}{n!}$  (\*) (see special note at end of question)

Then,

$$E'_m(x)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^m \frac{nx^{n-1}}{n!}$$

$$= 0 + 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^{m-1}}{(m-1)!}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

So

$$E'(x)$$

$$= \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

$$= E(x)$$

$$\text{Hence, } h'(x) = -e^{-x} \cdot E(x) + e^{-x} \cdot E'(x) = 0$$

This is true for all  $x$ .



### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17e Thus,  $h(x)$  must be constant.

$$\text{But } h(0) = e^{-0} \cdot E(0)$$

$$= 1 \times 1$$

$$= 1$$

$$\text{Thus, } e^{-x} \cdot E(x) = 1$$

Hence,  $E(x) = e^x$ , this is,

$$e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

#### Q17 **Special Note:**

Some readers may find it strange that the infinite series for  $E'(x)$  is determined using the finite series  $E_m(x)$  and  $E'_m(x)$ .

This is done because, in general, it is not valid to simply differentiate the terms of a series expansion.

That is, if  $E(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n$ , then it does not necessarily follow that,

$$f'(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{da^n}{dx}$$

For example,  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^{-n} \cos(4^n x)$  is a Fourier series that converges, but

$\frac{d}{dx} \text{ RHS} = -\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^n \sin(4^n x)$  does not converge, so cannot be equal to  $f'(x)$ .

The first series converges because the coefficients  $2^{-n}$  form a GP with

$$|\text{ratio}| < 1.$$

The second series does not converge because the coefficients  $2^n$  form a GP with

$$|\text{ratio}| > 1.$$

In Q17d, by differentiating the finite sum and taking the limit, the above problem is avoided.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$18a \quad c(x) = a_0 + a_2x^2 + a_4x^4 + \dots$$

$$18ai \quad \text{At } x = 0, \cos 0 = 1 \text{ and } c(0) = a_0.$$

$$\text{Hence, } a_0 = 1$$

$$18aii \quad c'(x) = 2a_2x + 4a_4x^3 + 6a_6x^5 + \dots$$

$$c''(x) = 2a_2 + 12a_4x^2 + 30a_6x^4 + \dots$$

and

$$-c(x) = -a_0 - a_2x^2 - a_4x^4 - \dots$$

So, if  $c''(x) = -c(x)$  then, equating coefficients of like powers of  $x$ :

$$x^0: \quad 2a_2 = -a_0 = -1$$

$$a_2 = -\frac{1}{2} = \frac{-1}{2!}$$

$$x^2: \quad 12a_4 = -a_2 = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$a_4 = \frac{1}{24} = \frac{-1}{4!}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18aiii Like Q17, this can be done by induction.

Here is just an outline of the proof:

$$\text{Assuming } a_{2k} = \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!}$$

Then differentiating  $c(x)$  twice and comparing with  $-c(x)$ , gives

$$(2k+2)(2k+1)2a_{2k+2} = -2a_{2k}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} 2a_{2k+2} &= \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+2)(2k+1)(2k)!} \\ &= \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+2)!} \end{aligned}$$

So, by the induction step, we find,

$$\begin{aligned} c(x) &= \frac{1}{0!} - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!} \end{aligned}$$

18b  $s(x) = a_1x + a_3x^3 + a_5x^5 + \cdots$

18bi At  $x = 0$ ,  $\sin 0 = 0$  and  $s(0) = 0$ , no information.

Differentiating at  $x = 0$ ,

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin x \big|_{x=0} = \cos x \big|_{x=0} = 1$$

At  $x = 0$ ,

$$\frac{d}{dx} s(x) \big|_{x=0} = a_1 + 3a_3x^2 + 5a_5x^4 + \cdots \big|_{x=0} = a_1$$

Hence,  $a_1 = 1$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18bii Differentiating again:

$$s''(x) = 6a_3x + 20a_5x^3 + 42a_7x^5 + \dots$$

$$-s(x) = -a_1x - a_3x^3 - a_5x^5 - \dots$$

So, if  $s''(x) = -s(x)$  then, equating coefficients of like powers of  $x$ :

$$x^1: \quad 6a_3 = -a_1 = -1$$

$$a_3 = -\frac{1}{6} = \frac{-1}{3!}$$

$$x^3: \quad 20a_5 = -a_3 = \frac{+1}{3!}$$

$$a_5 = \frac{1}{5 \times 4 \times 3!} = \frac{+1}{5!}$$

18biii Once again, induction may be used. Here is just an outline of the proof:

$$\text{Assuming } a_{2k+1} = \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}$$

Then comparing the terms in  $s''(x)$  with  $-s(x)$ , we have

$$(2k+3)(2k+2)2a_{2k+3}$$

$$= -a_{2k+1}$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}$$

$$2a_{2k+3}$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+3)(2k+2)(2k+1)!}$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+3)!}$$

So,

$$S(x)$$

$$= x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \dots$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18ci

$$c(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

Assuming we can differentiate term by term (which, like Q17, can be shown by taking the limit of a partial sum):

$$c'(x)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2nx^{(2n-1)}}{(2n)!}$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n 2nx^{(2n-1)}}{(2n)!} \quad (\text{Since when } n = 0, \text{ the first term is } 0)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{(2n-1)}}{(2n-1)!} \quad (\text{Cancelling } 2n)$$

$$= (-1) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n-1} x^{(2n-1)}}{(2n-1)!}$$

$$= (-1) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{(2n+1)}}{(2n+1)!} \quad (\text{Replacing } n \text{ with } n+1)$$

$$= -s(x)$$

Also,

$$s'(x)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n} (2n+1)}{(2n+1)!}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

$$= c(x)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18cii  $h(x) = (c(x) - \cos x)^2 + (s(x) - \sin x)^2$

So,

$$h'(x)$$

$$= 2(c(x) - \cos x)(c'(x) + \sin x) + 2(s(x) - \sin x)(s'(x) - \cos x)$$

$$= 2(c(x) - \cos x)(-s(x) + \sin x) + 2(s(x) - \sin x)(c(x) - \cos x)$$

$$= -2(c(x) - \cos x)(s(x) - \sin x) + 2(s(x) - \sin x)(c(x) - \cos x)$$

$$= 0$$

Hence,  $h(x)$  is constant. And subbing in  $x = 0$  gives,

$$h(0)$$

$$= (c(0) - \cos 0)^2 + (s(0) - \sin 0)^2$$

$$= 0^2 + 0^2$$

$$= 0$$

Hence,  $h(x) = 0$  for all real  $x$ .

18ciii Since  $h(x) = 0$ ,

$$(c(x) - \cos x)^2 + (s(x) - \sin x)^2 = 0$$

The only time the sum of two square reals is zero is if each is zero. Hence,

$$c(x) - \cos x = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad s(x) - \sin x = 0$$

Thus,  $c(x) = \cos x$  and  $s(x) = \sin x$ , for all real  $x$ .

19a, b  $e^{i\theta}$

$$= E(i\theta)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(i\theta)^n}{n!} \quad (\text{By question 17})$$

$$= 1 + \frac{(i\theta)^2}{2!} + \frac{(i\theta)^4}{4!} + \frac{(i\theta)^6}{6!} + \frac{(i\theta)^8}{8!} + \cdots + \frac{i\theta}{1!} + \frac{(i\theta)^3}{3!} + \frac{(i\theta)^5}{5!} + \frac{(i\theta)^7}{7!} + \cdots$$

$$= 1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2!} + \frac{\theta^4}{4!} - \frac{\theta^6}{6!} + \frac{\theta^8}{8!} + \cdots + i \left( \frac{\theta}{1!} - \frac{\theta^3}{3!} + \frac{\theta^5}{5!} - \frac{\theta^7}{7!} + \cdots \right)$$

$$= \cos \theta + i \sin \theta \quad (\text{By question 18})$$



### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

#### Solutions to Exercise 3E Foundation questions

1a  $2i = 2e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}}$  (note that  $i = e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}}$ )

1b  $2e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}} = 2e^{i(\frac{\pi}{2}+2k\pi)}$

1c  $z = re^{i\theta}$

$$z^2 = r^2 e^{2i\theta}$$

$$2e^{i(\frac{\pi}{2}+2k\pi)} = 2i = z^2 = r^2 e^{2i\theta}$$

Hence  $r^2 e^{2i\theta} = 2e^{i(\frac{\pi}{2}+2k\pi)}$ , thus  $r^2 = 2$  and  $2\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi = \frac{\pi+4k\pi}{2}$  and so  $r = \sqrt{2}$ ,  $\theta = \frac{(4k+1)\pi}{4}$

1d  $z = \sqrt{2}e^{\frac{(4k+1)i\pi}{4}} = \sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}, \sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}$

1e  $z = \sqrt{2}e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}} = \sqrt{2}\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i\right) = 1 + i$

$$z = \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{4}} = \sqrt{2}\left(\cos\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) + i\sin\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)\right) = \sqrt{2}\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i\right) = -1 - i$$

2a  $-1 = e^{i\pi}$

2b  $e^{i(\pi+2k\pi)}$

2c  $z^4 = (re^{i\theta})^4 = r^4 e^{4i\theta}$

Hence  $r^4 e^{4i\theta} = e^{i(\pi+2k\pi)}$

$r = 1$  and

$4\theta = (\pi + 2k\pi)$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi + 2k\pi}{4}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

2d

$$z = e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{4}}, e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}, e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}}, e^{i\frac{3\pi}{4}}$$

2e  $z = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i$

3a  $-i = e^{-\frac{i\pi}{2}}$

3b  $-i = e^{-i(\frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi)}$

3c  $z = re^{i\theta}$

$$(re^{i\theta})^3 = e^{-i(\frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi)}$$

$$r^3 e^{3i\theta} = e^{-i(\frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi)}$$

$$r = 1$$

$$3\theta = -\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi\right)$$

$$\theta = -\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + 2k\pi\right)$$

$$\theta = -\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{\pi + 4k\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$\theta = -\frac{(4k + 1)\pi}{6}$$

3d  $z = e^{\frac{i\pi}{2}}, e^{-\frac{i\pi}{6}}, e^{-\frac{5i\pi}{6}}$

4a  $e^{ni\theta} + e^{-ni\theta}$

$$= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos(-n\theta) + i \sin(-n\theta)$$

$$= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta$$

$$= 2 \cos n\theta$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 4b \quad & (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})^3 \\
 &= e^{3i\theta} + 3e^{2i\theta}e^{-i\theta} + 3e^{i\theta}e^{-2i\theta} + e^{-3i\theta} \\
 &= e^{3i\theta} + 3e^{i\theta} + 3e^{-i\theta} + e^{-3i\theta} \\
 &= e^{3i\theta} + 3(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}) + e^{-3i\theta} \\
 &= (e^{3i\theta} + e^{-3i\theta}) + 3(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 4c \quad & \cos^3 \theta \\
 &= \left(\frac{1}{2} \times 2 \cos \theta\right)^3 \\
 &= \left(\frac{1}{2} \times (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})\right)^3 \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^3} (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})^3 \\
 &= \frac{1}{8} ((e^{3i\theta} + e^{-3i\theta}) + 3(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})) \\
 &= \frac{1}{8} (2 \cos 3\theta + 6 \cos \theta) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \cos 3\theta + \frac{3}{4} \cos \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

5

$$\begin{aligned} e^{in\theta} - e^{-in\theta} \\ &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - (\cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta) \\ &= 2i \sin n\theta \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\sin n\theta = \frac{1}{2i} (e^{in\theta} - e^{-in\theta})$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sin^3 \theta &= \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \right)^3 \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^3} (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})^3 \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^3} (e^{3i\theta} - 3e^{2i\theta}e^{-i\theta} + 3e^{i\theta}e^{-2i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^3} (e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta} - 3e^{i\theta} + 3e^{-i\theta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^3} (e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta} - 3(e^{i\theta} - 3e^{-i\theta})) \\ &= \frac{1}{(2i)^3} (2i \sin 3\theta - 6i \sin \theta) \\ &= -\frac{1}{8} (2 \sin 3\theta - 6 \sin \theta) \\ &= \frac{3}{4} \sin \theta - \frac{1}{4} \sin 3\theta \end{aligned}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3E Development questions

6a Consider the equation

$$z^4 + 16 = 0$$

Let  $z = re^{i\theta}$  be a root of the equation, then

$$(re^{i\theta})^4 + 16 = 0$$

$$r^4 e^{4i\theta} = -16$$

Taking the modulus of both sides we see that  $r^4 = 16$ , and so  $e^{4i\theta} = -1$ .

Hence  $r = 2$  ( $r$  is always positive) and  $4\theta = \pi + 2n\pi$  where  $n$  is an integer. Thus,

$$\theta = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{4}, \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer}$$

This gives the roots of the equation as,

$$z = 2e^{\pm \frac{i\pi}{4}}, 2e^{\pm \frac{3i\pi}{4}}, \dots$$

Hence writing  $z^4 + 16$  as a product of factors gives

$$z^4 + 16 = \left(z - 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)$$

6b  $z^4 + 16$

$$= \left(z - 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)\left(z - 2e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2ze^{\frac{i\pi}{4}} - 2ze^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}} + 4e^0\right)\left(z^2 - 2ze^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}} - 2ze^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}} + 4e^0\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2z\left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{4}} + e^{-\frac{i\pi}{4}}\right) + 4\right)\left(z^2 - 2z\left(e^{\frac{3i\pi}{4}} + e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{4}}\right) + 4\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2z\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4} + \cos \frac{\pi}{4} - i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 4\right)$$

$$\left(z^2 - 2z\left(\cos \frac{3\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{4} + \cos \frac{3\pi}{4} - i \sin \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) + 4\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2z\left(2 \cos \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 4\right)\left(z^2 - 2z\left(2 \cos \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) + 4\right)$$

$$= \left(z^2 - 2z\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + 4\right) + \left(z^2 - 2z\left(-\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + 4\right)$$

$$= (z^2 - 2\sqrt{2}z + 4)(z^2 + 2\sqrt{2}z + 4)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

6c  $z^4 + 16$

$$= (z^4 + 8z^2 + 16) - 8z^2$$

$$= (z^2 + 4)^2 - (2\sqrt{2}z)^2$$

$$= (z^2 + 4 - 2\sqrt{2}z)(z^2 + 4 + 2\sqrt{2}z)$$

$$= (z^2 - 2\sqrt{2}z + 4)(z^2 + 2\sqrt{2}z + 4)$$

7a Consider the equation  $z^5 + 1 = 0$ . Let  $z = r e^{i\theta}$  be a root of the equation, then

$$r^5 e^{i5\theta} + 1 = 0$$

$$r^5 e^{i5\theta} = -1$$

Taking the modulus, we see that  $r = 1$  and so  $e^{i5\theta} = -1$ . Thus,  $5\theta = \pi + 2n\pi$  where  $n$  is an integer, and so

$$\theta = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{5}, \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer.}$$

Hence, the roots are,

$$z = e^{\pm \frac{i\pi}{5}}, e^{\pm \frac{3i\pi}{5}}, e^{\pm \frac{5i\pi}{5}}, \dots$$

$$z = e^{\pm \frac{i\pi}{5}}, e^{\pm \frac{3i\pi}{5}}, -1, \dots$$

Thus, writing  $z^5 + 1$  as a product of factors gives

$$\begin{aligned} z^5 + 1 &= (z - (-1)) \left( z - e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \\ &= (z + 1) \left( z - e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7b  $z^5 + 1$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (z + 1) \left( z - e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \left( z - e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - \left( e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} + e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) z + \left( e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) \right) \left( z^2 - \left( e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} + e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) z + \left( e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - \left( e^{\frac{i\pi}{5}} + e^{-\frac{i\pi}{5}} \right) z + e^0 \right) \left( z^2 - \left( e^{\frac{3i\pi}{5}} + e^{-\frac{3i\pi}{5}} \right) z + e^0 \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{5} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - i \sin \frac{\pi}{5} \right) z + 1 \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - \left( \cos \frac{3\pi}{5} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{3\pi}{5} - i \sin \frac{3\pi}{5} \right) z + 1 \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) (z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{5} + 1) (z^2 + 2z \cos \left( \pi - \frac{3\pi}{5} \right) + 1) \\
 &= (z + 1) (z - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} + 1) (z + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + 1)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

7c The sum of the roots of the equation  $z^5 + 1 = 0$  is

$$\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{5}\right) - 1 = 0$$

$$2 \cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{5}\right) + 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right) - 1 = 0$$

$$-2 \cos\left(\pi - \frac{3\pi}{5}\right) + 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right) - 1 = 0$$

Hence,

$$2 \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) - 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{5}\right) + 1 = 0 \quad (1)$$

Using the double angle identity, we have,

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} = 2 \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{5}\right)^2 - 1$$

Subbing into (1) gives

$$4 \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{5}\right)^2 - 2 - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} + 1 = 0$$

$$4 \left(\cos \frac{\pi}{5}\right)^2 - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - 1 = 0$$

Solving we have

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{(4 + 16)}}{8}$$

Since  $\cos \frac{\pi}{5} > 0$  we only take the positive root and so,

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

Back subbing this into the identity then gives,

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} &= 2 \times \frac{(1 + \sqrt{5})^2}{16} - 1 \\ &= \frac{6 + 2\sqrt{5} - 8}{8} \\ &= \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{4} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8a Noting that  $\operatorname{cis}(\theta) = e^{i\theta}$

it follows that

$$\cos \theta + i \sin \theta = e^{i\theta} \quad (1)$$

And hence that

$$\cos(-\theta) + i \sin(-\theta) = e^{-i\theta}$$

$$\cos \theta - i \sin \theta = e^{-i\theta} \quad (2)$$

(1) + (2):

$$2 \cos \theta = e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})$$

(1) – (2):

$$2i \sin \theta = e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})$$

$$8b \ i \quad \cos 2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta})$$

$$= \frac{1}{4}(e^{2i\theta} + e^0 + e^0 + e^{-2i\theta}) + \frac{1}{4}(e^{2i\theta} - e^0 - e^0 + e^{-2i\theta})$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})\right)^2$$

$$= \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8b ii  $\sin 2\theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{2i\theta} - e^{-2i\theta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \\ &= 2\left(\frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})\right) \\ &= 2 \cos \theta \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

8b iii  $\cos(\alpha + \beta)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i(\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha)})\frac{1}{2}(e^{i(\beta)} + e^{-i(\beta)}) - \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i(\alpha)} - e^{-i(\alpha)})\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i(\beta)} - e^{-i(\beta)}) \\ &= \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta \end{aligned}$$

8b iv  $\sin(\alpha + \beta)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &= \frac{1}{4i}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4i}(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i(\alpha)} - e^{-i(\alpha)})\frac{1}{2}(e^{i(\beta)} + e^{-i(\beta)}) + \frac{1}{2}(e^{i(\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha)})\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i(\beta)} - e^{-i(\beta)}) \\ &= \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

9a  $\cos^6 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}) \right)^6 \\ &= \frac{1}{2^6} (e^{6i\theta} + 6e^{4i\theta} + 15e^{2i\theta} + 20 + 15e^{-2i\theta} + 6e^{-4i\theta} + e^{-6i\theta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^6} ((e^{6i\theta} + e^{-6i\theta}) + 6(e^{4i\theta} + e^{-4i\theta}) + 15(e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta}) + 20) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^6} (2 \cos 6\theta + 12 \cos 4\theta + 30 \cos 2\theta + 20) \\ &= \frac{1}{32} (\cos 6\theta + 6 \cos 4\theta + 15 \cos 2\theta + 10) \end{aligned}$$

9b

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos^6 \theta \, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{1}{2^5} (\cos 6\theta + 6 \cos 4\theta + 15 \cos 2\theta + 10) \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2^5} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\cos 6\theta + 6 \cos 4\theta + 15 \cos 2\theta + 10) \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2^5} \left[ \frac{1}{6} \sin 6\theta + \frac{6}{4} \sin 4\theta + \frac{15}{2} \sin 2\theta + 10\theta \right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2^5} \left( \frac{1}{6} \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} + \frac{6}{4} \sin \pi + \frac{15}{2} \sin \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{10\pi}{4} - 0 \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^5} \left( -\frac{1}{6} + 0 + \frac{15}{2} + \frac{10\pi}{4} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^5} \left( \frac{44}{6} + \frac{10\pi}{4} \right) \\ &= \frac{15\pi + 44}{192} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10a  $\sin^3 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \right)^3 \\ &= \frac{1}{8i^3} (e^{3i\theta} - 3e^{i\theta} + 3e^{-i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{8i} ((e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta}) - 3(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})) \\ &= -\frac{1}{8i} (2i \sin 3\theta - 6i \sin \theta) \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} (\sin 3\theta - 3 \sin \theta) \end{aligned}$$

$\sin^5 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \right)^5 \\ &= \frac{1}{32i^5} (e^{5i\theta} - 5e^{3i\theta} + 10e^{i\theta} - 10e^{-i\theta} + 5e^{-3i\theta} - e^{-5i\theta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{32i} ((e^{5i\theta} - e^{-5i\theta}) - 5(e^{3i\theta} - e^{-3i\theta}) + 10(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})) \\ &= \frac{1}{32i} (2i \sin 5\theta - 10i \sin 3\theta + 20i \sin \theta) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} (\sin 5\theta - 5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta) \end{aligned}$$

10b  $\sin^3 \theta \cos^2 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sin^3 \theta (1 - \sin^2 \theta) \\ &= \sin^3 \theta - \sin^5 \theta \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} (\sin 3\theta - 3 \sin \theta) - \frac{1}{16} (\sin 5\theta - 5 \sin 3\theta + 10 \sin \theta) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} (2 \sin \theta + \sin 3\theta - \sin 5\theta) \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10c

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \sin^3 \theta \cos^2 \theta \, d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{1}{16} (2 \sin \theta + \sin 3\theta - \sin 5\theta) \, d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{16} \left[ -2 \cos \theta - \frac{1}{3} \cos 3\theta + \frac{1}{5} \cos 5\theta \right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{16} \left( -2 \cos \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{3} \cos \pi + \frac{1}{5} \cos \frac{5\pi}{3} - \left( -2 \cos 0 - \frac{1}{3} \cos 0 + \frac{1}{5} \cos 0 \right) \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{16} \left( -1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{10} - \left( -2 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} \right) \right) \\
 &= \frac{47}{480}
 \end{aligned}$$

11a  $e^{ni\theta} + e^{-ni\theta}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta \\
 &= 2 \cos n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

11b Since

$$\begin{aligned}
 5z^4 - 11z^3 + 16z^2 - 11z + 5 &= 0 \\
 z^2(5z^2 - 11z + 16 - 11z^{-1} + 5z^{-2}) &= 0 \\
 z^2(5(z^2 + z^{-2}) - 11(z + z^{-1}) + 16) &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the roots have modulus 1, we have  $z \neq 0$ , and so,

$$\begin{aligned}
 5(2 \cos 2\theta) - 11(2 \cos \theta) + 16 &= 0 \\
 5 \cos 2\theta - 11 \cos \theta + 8 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11c Using the result from part b,

$$5 \cos 2\theta - 11 \cos \theta + 8 = 0$$

$$5(2\cos^2 \theta - 1) - 11 \cos \theta + 8 = 0$$

$$10 \cos^2 \theta - 5 - 11 \cos \theta + 8 = 0$$

$$10 \cos^2 \theta - 11 \cos \theta + 3 = 0$$

$$(5 \cos \theta - 3)(2 \cos \theta - 1) = 0$$

Hence, we have

$$\cos \theta = \frac{3}{5} \text{ or } \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{When } \cos \theta = \frac{3}{5}, \quad \sin \theta = \pm \frac{\sqrt{5^2 - 3^2}}{5} = \pm \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\text{When } \cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \sin \theta = \pm \frac{\sqrt{2^2 - 1}}{2} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\text{Hence the roots are } z = \frac{3}{5} \pm \frac{4}{5}i, \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$$

12  $1 - i$

$$= \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}$$

$$= e^{\ln \sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{4}}$$

$$= e^{\ln \sqrt{2} - i\frac{\pi}{4}}$$

Comparing this with  $e^{a+ib}$  gives  $a = \ln \sqrt{2} = \frac{1}{2} \ln 2$  and  $b = -\frac{\pi}{4}$ .

13a  $\cos(A + B) + \cos(A - B)$

$$= \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B + \cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B$$

$$= 2 \cos A \cos B$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13b Let  $A = \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}$  and  $B = \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}$ , thus

$$\begin{aligned} & 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) \\ &= \cos\left(\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)\right) + \cos\left(\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)\right) \\ &= \cos \alpha + \cos \beta \end{aligned}$$

13c  $\sin(A+B) + \sin(A-B)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B + \sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B \\ &= 2 \sin A \cos B \end{aligned}$$

Let  $A = \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}$  and  $B = \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}$ , thus

$$\begin{aligned} & 2 \sin\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) \\ &= \sin\left(\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)\right) + \sin\left(\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)\right) \\ &= \sin \alpha + \sin \beta \end{aligned}$$

as required

13d  $e^{i\alpha} + e^{i\beta}$

$$= \cos \alpha + i \sin \alpha + \cos \beta + i \sin \beta$$

$$= (\cos \alpha + \cos \beta) + i(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta)$$

$$= 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) + i \left(2 \sin\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)\right) \quad (\text{using part b and c})$$

$$= 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) \left[ \cos\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \right]$$

$$= 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14ai  $\cos \alpha + \cos \beta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha}) + \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\alpha} + e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\alpha} + e^{-i\beta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)}\right)\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)}\right) \\ &= 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)}\right)\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)}\right)\right) \\ &= 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

14aai  $\sin \alpha + \sin \beta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}) + \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\alpha} + e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\alpha} - e^{-i\beta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)}\right)\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)}\right) \\ &= 2\left(\frac{1}{2i}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha+\beta)}\right)\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{-\frac{i}{2}(\alpha-\beta)}\right)\right) \\ &= 2 \sin\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

14b  $\tan \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})}{\frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})} \\ &= \frac{(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})}{i(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14c  $\tan 2\theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(e^{2i\theta} - e^{-2i\theta})}{i(e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta})} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{2}{i}(e^{2i\theta} - e^{-2i\theta})}{2(e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta})} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{2}{i}(e^{2i\theta} - e^{-2i\theta})}{e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + e^{-2i\theta}} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{2}{i}(e^{2i\theta} - e^{-2i\theta})}{e^{2i\theta} + 2 + e^{-2i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} - 2 + e^{-2i\theta}} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{2}{i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})}{(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})^2 + (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})^2} \\
 &= \frac{2\left(\frac{(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})}{i(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})}\right)}{1 + \frac{(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})^2}{(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})^2}} \\
 &= \frac{2\left(\frac{(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})}{i(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})}{i(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})}\right)^2} \\
 &= \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta}
 \end{aligned}$$

15a  $z + z^2 + z^3 + \dots + z^n$

This is a geometric series with  $a = z$  and  $r = z$ . Hence, the sum of the geometric series is

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_n &= \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} \\
 &= \frac{z(z^n - 1)}{z - 1} \\
 &= \frac{z^{n+1} - z}{z - 1}
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

15b Using part a we have

$$z + z^2 + \dots + z^n = \frac{z^{n+1} - z}{z - 1}$$

Putting  $z = e^{i\theta}$  gives

$$e^{i\theta} + (e^{i\theta})^2 + \dots + (e^{i\theta})^n = \frac{(e^{i(n+1)\theta} - e^{i\theta})}{e^{i\theta} - 1}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{(e^{i(n+1)\theta} - e^{i\theta})}{e^{i\theta} - 1}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{e^{i\theta}(e^{in\theta} - 1)}{e^{i\theta} - 1}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{(e^{in\theta} - 1)}{1 - e^{-i\theta}}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{e^{\frac{1}{2}in\theta} (e^{\frac{1}{2}in\theta} - e^{-\frac{1}{2}in\theta})}{e^{-\frac{1}{2}i\theta} (e^{\frac{1}{2}i\theta} - e^{-\frac{1}{2}i\theta})}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{e^{\frac{1}{2}i(n+1)\theta} (e^{\frac{1}{2}in\theta} - e^{-\frac{1}{2}in\theta})}{(e^{\frac{1}{2}i\theta} - e^{-\frac{1}{2}i\theta})}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{e^{\frac{1}{2}i(n+1)\theta} (2i \sin \frac{1}{2}n\theta)}{2i \sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}$$

$$e^{i\theta} + e^{2i\theta} + \dots + e^{ni\theta} = \frac{e^{\frac{1}{2}i(n+1)\theta} (\sin \frac{1}{2}n\theta)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}$$

Expanding both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} & \cos \theta + i \sin \theta + \cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta + \dots + \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta \\ &= \frac{(\cos \frac{1}{2}(n+1)\theta + i \sin \frac{1}{2}(n+1)\theta) (\sin \frac{1}{2}n\theta)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta} \end{aligned}$$

Equating the imaginary component in the above equation gives

$$\sin \theta + \sin 2\theta + \dots + \sin n\theta = \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(n+1)\theta (\sin \frac{1}{2}n\theta)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

15c Let  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{n}$ , then using the result from part b we have

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{n\pi}{n} = \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}n \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right) \sin \frac{1}{2}(n+1) \frac{\pi}{n}}{\sin \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} + \sin \pi = \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2} \pi \sin \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) \pi}{\sin \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} + 0 = \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2} \pi \sin \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) \pi}{\sin \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} = \frac{(1) \sin \left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{2n}\right)}{\sin \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} = \frac{\cos \left(\frac{\pi}{2n}\right)}{\sin \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)}$$

$$\sin \frac{\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} + \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} + \cdots + \sin \frac{(n-1)\pi}{n} = \cot \frac{\pi}{2n}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3E Enrichment questions

16 LHS

$$= \frac{e^{(\alpha+\beta)i} - e^{-(\alpha+\beta)i}}{i(e^{(\alpha+\beta)i} + e^{-(\alpha+\beta)i})}$$

RHS

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \frac{e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}}{i(e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha})} + \frac{e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}}{i(e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta})} \right) \\ &= \left( 1 + \frac{e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}}{e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha}} \cdot \frac{e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}}{e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}} \right) \\ &= \frac{(e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha})(e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) + (e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta})(e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha})}{i[(e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha})(e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) + (e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha})(e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta})]} \\ &= \frac{e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} - e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}}{i[e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\beta-\alpha)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}]} \\ &= \frac{2(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)})}{2i(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)})} \\ &= \frac{e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)}}{i(e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{-i(\alpha+\beta)})} \\ &= \text{LHS} \end{aligned}$$

17a  $z^{2n+1} = 1$

So,  $e^{i(2n+1)\theta} = e^{i2k\pi}$ , where  $z = e^{i\theta}$  and  $k$  is an integer

Thus  $(2n+1)\theta = 2k\pi$ , which gives,

$$\theta = \frac{2k\pi}{(2n+1)}, \text{ and for principal values } -n \leq k \leq n$$

Note: The answers in the textbook are equivalent when converted to principal values. The proof is left as an exercise.

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17b  $z^{2n+1} - 1 = 0$

So, by the factor theorem and part a:

$$z^{2n+1} - 1$$

$$= \prod_{k=-n}^n (z - e^{i\theta}), \theta = \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1}$$

$$= (z - 1) \prod_{k=1}^n (z - e^{i\theta})(z - e^{-i\theta})$$

$$= (z - 1) \prod_{k=1}^n (z^2 - (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})z + 1)$$

$$= (z - 1) \prod_{k=1}^n \left( z^2 - 2 \left( \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1} \right) z + 1 \right)$$

But  $z^{2n+1} - 1 = (z - 1)(z^{2n} + z^{2n-1} + \dots + z + 1)$  (By G.P. theory.)

Hence,

$$z^{2n} + z^{2n-1} + \dots + z + 1 = \prod_{k=1}^n \left( z^2 - 2 \left( \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1} \right) z + 1 \right)$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17c When  $z = 1$ ,

LHS

$$= 1^{2n} + 1^{2n-1} + \dots + 1^2 + 1^1 + 1$$

$$= 2n + 1$$

RHS

$$= \prod_{k=1}^n \left( 2 - 2 \left( \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1} \right) z \right)$$

$$= \prod_{k=1}^n \left( 2 \cdot 2 \cdot \sin^2 \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \right) \text{ (double angle)}$$

Hence,

$$2n + 1$$

$$= \prod_{k=1}^n \left( 2 \sin \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \right)^2$$

$$= \left( \prod_{k=1}^n 2 \sin \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} \right)^2$$

Thus

$$\prod_{k=1}^n 2 \sin \frac{k\pi}{2n+1} = \sqrt{2n+1}$$

Viz:

$$2^n \sin \frac{\pi}{2n+1} \sin \frac{2\pi}{2n+1} \sin \frac{3\pi}{2n+1} \dots \sin \frac{n\pi}{2n+1} = \sqrt{2n+1}$$

### Solutions to Exercise 3F Chapter review

$$\begin{aligned}
 1a \quad & (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^3 (\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta)^2 \\
 &= (\text{cis } \theta)^3 (\text{cis } 2\theta)^2 \\
 &= \text{cis } 3\theta \text{ cis } 4\theta \\
 &= \text{cis } 7\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 1b \quad & \frac{(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^4}{(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)^2} \\
 &= \frac{(\text{cis } \theta)^4}{(\text{cis } (-\theta))^2} \\
 &= \frac{\text{cis } 4\theta}{\text{cis } (-2\theta)} \\
 &= \text{cis } 6\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 2 \quad & \frac{\left(e^{-\frac{i\pi}{7}}\right)^3}{\left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{7}}\right)^4} \\
 &= \frac{e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{7}}}{e^{i\frac{4\pi}{7}}} \\
 &= e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{7}} \\
 &= e^{-i\pi} \\
 &= -1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 3a \quad & 1 - i \\
 &= \sqrt{1+1} \text{cis} \left( \tan^{-1} -\frac{1}{1} \right) \\
 &= \sqrt{2} \text{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

3b  $(1 - i)^{13}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right)^{13} \\
 &= (\sqrt{2})^{13} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{4} \times 13 \right) \\
 &= 2^6 \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{13\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 2^6 \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( -\frac{13\pi}{4} + 4\pi \right) \\
 &= 2^6 \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{3\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 2^6 \sqrt{2} \left( -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \\
 &= -64 + 64i
 \end{aligned}$$

4a  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^{12} + (\sqrt{3} - i)^{12}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left( 2e^{\frac{\pi}{6}} \right)^{12} + \left( 2e^{-\frac{\pi}{6}} \right)^{12} \\
 &= 2^{12} e^{2\pi} + 2^{12} e^{-2\pi} \\
 &= 2^{12} + 2^{12} \\
 &= 2 \times 2^{12} \\
 &= 2^{13}
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 4b \text{ i } & (\sqrt{3} + i)^n + (\sqrt{3} - i)^n \\
 &= \left(2e^{\frac{\pi}{6}}\right)^n + \left(2e^{-\frac{\pi}{6}}\right)^n \\
 &= 2^{12}e^{\frac{n\pi}{6}} + 2^{12}e^{-\frac{n\pi}{6}} \\
 &= 2^{12}e^{\frac{n\pi}{6}} + 2^{12}e^{-\frac{n\pi}{6}} \\
 &= 2^{12}\left(e^{\frac{n\pi}{6}} + e^{-\frac{n\pi}{6}}\right) \\
 &= 2^{12}\left(\cos\frac{n\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{n\pi}{6} + \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} - i\sin\frac{n\pi}{6}\right) \\
 &= 2^{13}\cos\frac{n\pi}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

which is real

$$4b \text{ ii } (\sqrt{3} + i)^n + (\sqrt{3} - i)^n$$

is rational when  $2^{13}\cos\frac{n\pi}{6}$  is rational and hence when  $\cos\frac{n\pi}{6}$  is rational. This is when  $n$  is even or a multiple of 3.

$$\begin{aligned}
 5a \quad & \cos 6\theta + i\sin 6\theta \\
 &= \text{cis } 6\theta \\
 &= (\text{cis } \theta)^6 \\
 &= (\cos \theta + i\sin \theta)^6 \\
 &= \cos^6 \theta + 6i\cos^5 \theta \sin \theta + 15i^2\cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 20i^3\cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta \\
 &\quad + 15i^4\cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta + 6i^5\cos \theta \sin^5 \theta + i^6\sin^6 \theta \\
 &= \cos^6 \theta + 6i\cos^5 \theta \sin \theta - 15\cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta - 20i\cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta \\
 &\quad + 15\cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta + 6i\cos \theta \sin^5 \theta - \sin^6 \theta \\
 &= (\cos^6 \theta - 15\cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 15\cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta - \sin^6 \theta) \\
 &\quad + i(6\cos^5 \theta \sin \theta - 20\cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta + 6\cos \theta \sin^5 \theta)
 \end{aligned}$$

Equating the real components of the above equation gives

$$\cos 6\theta = \cos^6 \theta - 15\cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 15\cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta - \sin^6 \theta$$

Equating the imaginary components of the above equation gives

$$\sin 6\theta = 6\cos^5 \theta \sin \theta - 20\cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta + 6\cos \theta \sin^5 \theta$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

5b  $\tan 6\theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{\sin 6\theta}{\cos 6\theta} \\
 &= \frac{6 \cos^5 \theta \sin \theta - 20 \cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta + 6 \cos \theta \sin^5 \theta}{\cos^6 \theta - 15 \cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 15 \cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta - \sin^6 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{6 \cos^5 \theta \sin \theta - 20 \cos^3 \theta \sin^3 \theta + 6 \cos \theta \sin^5 \theta}{\cos^6 \theta - 15 \cos^4 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 15 \cos^2 \theta \sin^4 \theta - \sin^6 \theta} \div \frac{\cos^6 \theta}{\cos^6 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{6 \tan \theta - 20 \tan^3 \theta + 6 \tan^5 \theta}{1 - 15 \tan^2 \theta + 15 \tan^4 \theta - \tan^6 \theta} \\
 &= \frac{6t - 20t^3 + 6t^5}{1 - 15t^2 + 15t^4 - t^6} \\
 &= \frac{2t(3 - 10t^2 + 3t^4)}{1 - 15t^2 + 15t^4 - t^6}
 \end{aligned}$$

6a

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 \\
 &= z^4 + 4z^3 \left(\frac{1}{z}\right) + 6z^2 \left(\frac{1}{z^2}\right) + 4z \left(\frac{1}{z^3}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{z^4}\right) \\
 &= z^4 + 4z^2 + 6 + 4z^{-2} + z^{-4}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\left(z - \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 \\
 &= z^4 - 4z^3 \left(\frac{1}{z}\right) + 6z^2 \left(\frac{1}{z^2}\right) - 4z \left(\frac{1}{z^3}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{z^4}\right) \\
 &= z^4 - 4z^2 + 6 - 4z^{-2} + z^{-4}
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

6b Adding the above two results from part a,

$$\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 + \left(z - \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 = 2(z^4 + 6 + z^{-4})$$

$$\left(z + \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 + \left(z - \frac{1}{z}\right)^4 = 2(z^4 + z^{-4} + 6)$$

$$(2 \cos \theta)^4 + (2i \sin \theta)^4 = 2(2 \cos 4\theta + 6)$$

$$16 \cos^4 \theta + 16 \sin^4 \theta = 4(\cos 4\theta + 3)$$

$$\cos^4 \theta + \sin^4 \theta = \frac{1}{4}(\cos 4\theta + 3)$$

7a If  $\omega$  is a cube root of  $-1$  it follows that

$$\omega^3 = -1$$

Now

$$(-\omega^2)^3$$

$$= -\omega^6$$

$$= -(\omega^3)^2$$

$$= -(-1)^2$$

$$= -1$$

Hence  $-\omega^2$  is a cube root of  $-1$ .

7b  $(6\omega + 1)(6\omega^2 - 1)$

$$= 36\omega^3 + 6(\omega^2 - \omega) - 1$$

$$= 36(-1) - 6(\omega - \omega^2) - 1$$

$$= -36 - 6(\omega - \omega^2 - 1) - 6 - 1$$

Since  $\omega - \omega^2 - 1$  is the sum of the cube roots of  $-1$ , and because there is no coefficient of  $\omega^2$  in  $\omega^3 - 1 = 0$ , it follows that  $\omega - \omega^2 - 1 = 0$ . Hence,

$$(6\omega + 1)(6\omega^2 - 1)$$

$$= -36 - 6(\omega - \omega^2 - 1) - 6 - 1$$

$$= -36 - 6(0) - 6 - 1$$

$$= -43$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

8  $z^3 - 8i = 0$

$$z^3 = 8i$$

Let  $z = re^{i\theta}$ , then  $z^3 = r^3 e^{3i\theta}$ . Taking the modulus of both sides we have  $r^3 = 8$ , and so we must have  $r = 2$  and  $e^{i3\theta} = i$ . Hence, we must have  $3\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2n\pi$ , where  $n$  is an integer, and so  $\theta = \frac{(1+4n)\pi}{6}$ . Hence, taking  $n = -1, 0, 1$  we see that the roots are,

$$z = 2e^{-\frac{i\pi}{2}}, 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}, 2e^{\frac{i5\pi}{6}}$$

9a  $2 + 2i$

$$= \sqrt{2^2 + 2^2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$= 2\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis}(\theta)$  be a cube root of  $2\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ . It follows that

$$z^3 = 2\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$r^3 \operatorname{cis}(3\theta) = 2\sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

Taking the modulus, we see that  $r^3 = 2\sqrt{2}$  and hence  $r = \sqrt{2}$ . Then we must also have that  $3\theta = 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{(8n+1)\pi}{4}$ , where  $n$  is an integer. Thus,

$$\theta = \frac{(8n+1)\pi}{12} \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer}$$

and so

$$z = \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{(8n+1)\pi}{12}\right)$$

Taking  $n = -1, 0, 1$  we see that the 3 roots are,

$$z = \sqrt{2} \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{k\pi}{12}\right) \text{ for } k = -7, 1, 9$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

9b Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$  be a sixth root of  $i$ , it follows that

$$z^6 = r^6 \operatorname{cis} 6\theta = i = \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Hence comparing modulus, we see that  $r = 1$ , and by comparing argument we see that,  $6\theta = 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$  where  $n$  is an integer. Thus,

$$\theta = \frac{(4n + 1)\pi}{12}$$

and so, the sixth roots have the form

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{(4n + 1)\pi}{12} \right) \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer}$$

Taking  $n = -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2$ , we have the six roots as,

$$z = \operatorname{cis} \left( \frac{k\pi}{12} \right) \text{ for } k = -11, -7, -3, 1, 5, 9$$

10a  $z$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 4\sqrt{3}e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}} - 4e^{\frac{5i\pi}{6}} \\ &= 4\sqrt{3} \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3} \right) - 4 \left( \cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6} \right) \\ &= 4\sqrt{3} \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2} \right) - 4 \left( -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{i}{2} \right) \\ &= 4\sqrt{3} + 4i \\ &= 8 \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{i}{2} \right) \\ &= 8e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

10b Using part a we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{z}{8} + i\left(\frac{z}{8}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{z}{8}\right)^3 \\
 &= \frac{8e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}}{8} + i\left(\frac{8e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}}{8}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{8e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}}{8}\right)^3 \\
 &= e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}} + i\left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}\right)^2 + \left(e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}\right)^3 \\
 &= e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}} + ie^{\frac{i\pi}{3}} + e^{\frac{i\pi}{2}} \\
 &= \cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6} + i\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + i^2\sin\frac{\pi}{3} + \cos\frac{\pi}{2} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{2} \\
 &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{i}{2} + \frac{i}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i + 0 + i \\
 &= 2i
 \end{aligned}$$

10c Let  $\lambda = re^{i\theta}$  be a cube root of  $z$ . It follows that

$$\lambda^3 = r^3 e^{3i\theta} = 8e^{\frac{i\pi}{6}}$$

Comparing modulus, we see that  $r^3 = 8$  and so  $r = 2$ . Then comparing argument, we see that  $3\theta = 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{(12n+1)\pi}{6}$ , where  $n$  is an integer. Hence,

$$\theta = \frac{(12n+1)\pi}{18}$$

Thus, the roots are of the form

$$\lambda = 2e^{\frac{(12n+1)\pi}{18}} \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer}$$

Taking  $n = -1, 0, 1$ , we see that the three cube roots of  $z$  are,

$$\lambda = 2e^{-\frac{11i\pi}{18}}, 2e^{\frac{i\pi}{18}}, 2e^{\frac{13i\pi}{18}}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\begin{aligned}
 11a \quad & (z - z^{-1})^7 \\
 &= z^7 - 7(z^6)(z^{-1}) + 21(z^5)(z^{-2}) - 35(z^4)(z^{-3}) + 35(z^3)(z^{-4}) - 21(z^2)(z^{-5}) \\
 &\quad + 7(z)(z^{-6}) - z^{-7} \\
 &= z^7 - 7z^5 + 21z^3 - 35z + 35z^{-1} - 21z^{-3} + 7z^{-5} - z^{-7} \\
 &= (z^7 - z^{-7}) - 7(z^5 - z^{-5}) + 21(z^3 - z^{-3}) - 35(z - z^{-1})
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 11b \quad & z = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta = \operatorname{cis} \theta \\
 & z - z^{-1} = \operatorname{cis} \theta - \operatorname{cis}(-\theta) \\
 &= \cos \theta + i \sin \theta - (\cos \theta - i \sin \theta) \\
 &= 2i \sin \theta \\
 \\
 & z^n = \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta = \operatorname{cis} n\theta \\
 & z^n - z^{-n} = \operatorname{cis} n\theta - \operatorname{cis}(-n\theta) \\
 &= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta - (\cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta) \\
 &= 2i \sin n\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 11c \quad & \sin^7 \theta \\
 &= i^8 \sin^7 \theta \\
 &= \left( \frac{z - z^{-1}}{2i} \right)^7 \\
 &= \frac{i}{128} (z - z^{-1})^7 \\
 &= \frac{i}{128} ((z^7 - z^{-7}) - 7(z^5 - z^{-5}) + 21(z^3 - z^{-3}) - 35(z - z^{-1})) \\
 &= \frac{i}{128} (2i \sin 7\theta - 7(2i \sin 5\theta) + 21(2i \sin 3\theta) - 35(2i \sin \theta)) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{128} (2 \sin 7\theta - 7(2 \sin 5\theta) + 21(2 \sin 3\theta) - 35(2 \sin \theta)) \\
 &= \frac{1}{64} (35 \sin \theta - 21 \sin 3\theta + 7 \sin 5\theta - \sin 7\theta)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

11d Using part c

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int (35 \sin \theta - 64 \sin^7 \theta) d\theta \\
 &= \int \left( 35 \sin \theta - 64 \left( \frac{1}{64} (35 \sin \theta - 21 \sin 3\theta + 7 \sin 5\theta - \sin 7\theta) \right) \right) d\theta \\
 &= \int (35 \sin \theta - (35 \sin \theta - 21 \sin 3\theta + 7 \sin 5\theta - \sin 7\theta)) d\theta \\
 &= \int (21 \sin 3\theta - 7 \sin 5\theta + \sin 7\theta) d\theta \\
 &= -7 \cos 3\theta + \frac{7}{5} \cos 5\theta - \frac{1}{7} \cos 7\theta + C
 \end{aligned}$$

12a  $\cos 5\theta + i \sin 5\theta$

$$= \text{cis } 5\theta$$

$$= (\text{cis } \theta)^5$$

$$= (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^5$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \cos^5 \theta + 5i \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta + 10i^2 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 10i^3 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta \\
 &\quad + 5i^4 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta + i^5 \sin^5 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \cos^5 \theta + 5i \cos^4 \theta \sin \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta - 10i \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta \\
 &\quad + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta + i \sin^5 \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

Equating real components in the above equation gives

$$\cos 5\theta$$

$$= \cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta \sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos \theta \sin^4 \theta$$

$$= \cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) + 5 \cos \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta)^2$$

$$= \cos^5 \theta - 10 \cos^3 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) + 5 \cos \theta (1 - 2 \cos^2 \theta + \cos^4 \theta)$$

$$= 16 \cos^5 \theta - 20 \cos^3 \theta + 5 \cos \theta$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12b  $16x^4 - 20x^2 + 5 = 0$

Let  $x = \cos \theta$ , then we have

$$16 \cos^4 \theta - 20 \cos^2 \theta + 5 = 0$$

$$\cos \theta (16 \cos^4 \theta - 20 \cos^2 \theta + 5) = 0 \times \cos \theta$$

$$16 \cos^5 \theta - 20 \cos^3 \theta + 5 \cos \theta = 0$$

$$\cos 5\theta = 0 \text{ (using part a)}$$

Thus, we must have

$$5\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \frac{7\pi}{2}, \frac{9\pi}{2}$$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{10}, \frac{3\pi}{10}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{7\pi}{10}, \frac{9\pi}{10}$$

We omit  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  as that solution was introduced when we multiplied the equation by  $\cos \theta$ .

So the solutions are  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{10}, \frac{3\pi}{10}, \frac{7\pi}{10}, \frac{9\pi}{10}$

Hence the solutions are  $x = \cos \frac{\pi}{10}, \cos \frac{3\pi}{10}, \cos \frac{7\pi}{10}, \cos \frac{9\pi}{10}$

12c The product of the roots is

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} \cos \frac{7\pi}{10} \cos \frac{9\pi}{10} = \frac{5}{16}$$

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} \left( -\cos \left( \pi - \frac{7\pi}{10} \right) \right) \left( -\cos \left( \pi - \frac{9\pi}{10} \right) \right) = \frac{5}{16}$$

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} \cos \frac{\pi}{10} = \frac{5}{16}$$

$$\left( \cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} \right)^2 = \frac{5}{16}$$

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{5}}{4}$$

But  $\cos \frac{\pi}{10}, \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} > 0$  and so

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{10} \cos \frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{4}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

12d Let  $u = 2x^2 - 1$

$$\begin{aligned} & 4u^2 - 2u - 1 \\ &= 4(2x^2 - 1)^2 - 2(2x^2 - 1) - 1 \\ &= 4(4x^4 - 4x^2 + 1) - (4x^2 - 2) - 1 \\ &= 16x^4 - 20x^2 + 5 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

12e  $x = \cos \frac{\pi}{10}$  is a solution to  $16x^4 - 20x^2 + 5 = 0$ , and using the double angle identity we have,

$$\begin{aligned} & \cos \frac{\pi}{5} \\ &= 2 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{10} - 1 \\ &= 2x^2 - 1 \end{aligned}$$

From part d,  $u = 2x^2 - 1$  is a solution to the equation  $4u^2 - 2u - 1 = 0$ . So, letting  $u = \cos \frac{\pi}{5}$ , the solutions to the equation become,

$$\begin{aligned} & \cos \frac{\pi}{5} \\ &= \frac{-(-2) \pm \sqrt{(-2)^2 - 4(4)(-1)}}{2(4)} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 + 16}}{8} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm 2\sqrt{5}}{8} \\ &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{4} \end{aligned}$$

But since  $\cos \frac{\pi}{5} > 0$ , we have  $\cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13a Begin by noting that

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta \quad (1)$$

and that

$$e^{-i\theta} = \cos(-\theta) + i \sin(-\theta)$$

Hence

$$e^{-i\theta} = \cos \theta - i \sin \theta \quad (2)$$

(1) + (2):

$$\begin{aligned} e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta} &= \cos \theta + i \sin \theta + \cos \theta - i \sin \theta \\ &= 2 \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}(e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta})$$

(1) – (2):

$$\begin{aligned} e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta} &= \cos \theta + i \sin \theta - (\cos \theta - i \sin \theta) \\ &= 2i \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta})$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13b i  $2 \cos^2 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \left( \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}) \right)^2 \\
 &= 2 \left( \frac{1}{4} (e^{2i\theta} + 2e^0 + e^{-2i\theta}) \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} (e^{2i\theta} + 2 + e^{-2i\theta}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} (\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta + 2 + \cos 2\theta - i \sin 2\theta) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} (2 + 2 \cos 2\theta) \\
 &= 1 + \cos 2\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

13b ii  $2 \sin^2 \theta$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) \right)^2 \\
 &= 2 \left( \frac{1}{-4} (e^{2i\theta} - 2e^0 + e^{-2i\theta}) \right) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (e^{2i\theta} - 2 + e^{-2i\theta}) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta - 2 + \cos 2\theta - i \sin 2\theta) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (-2 + 2 \cos 2\theta) \\
 &= 1 - \cos 2\theta
 \end{aligned}$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

13b iii  $\cos(\alpha - \beta)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} (e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{-i(\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} (2e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + 2e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} (e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} \\
 &\quad - e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} (e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &\quad - \frac{1}{4} (e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha}) \times \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) + \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}) \times \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}) \\
 &= \cos \alpha \cos \beta + \sin \alpha \sin \beta
 \end{aligned}$$

13b iv  $\sin(\alpha - \beta)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{-i(\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4i} (2e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - 2e^{-i(\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4i} (e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} - e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} + e^{i(\alpha-\beta)} - e^{i(-\alpha+\beta)} \\
 &\quad + e^{i(-\alpha-\beta)}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4i} ((e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha})(e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) - (e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha})(e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta})) \\
 &= \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}) \right) \left( \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta}) \right) - \left( \frac{1}{2i} (e^{i\alpha} + e^{-i\alpha}) \right) \left( \frac{1}{2} (e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}) \right) \\
 &= \sin \alpha \cos \beta - \cos \alpha \sin \beta
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14a Let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$  be a seventh root of  $-1$ , then

$$z^7 = r^7 (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^7 = r^7 \operatorname{cis} 7\theta = -1$$

It follows by comparing modulus, then that  $r = 1$  and so  $\operatorname{cis} 7\theta = -1$

Hence  $\cos 7\theta = -1$  and so  $7\theta = \pm\pi, \pm 3\pi, \pm 5\pi, 7\pi$

Thus  $\theta = \pm\frac{\pi}{7}, \pm\frac{3\pi}{7}, \pm\frac{5\pi}{7}, \pi$  and so the roots are

$$z = \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{3\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{5\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}(\pi)$$

This is,

$$z = \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{3\pi}{7}\right), \operatorname{cis}\left(\pm\frac{5\pi}{7}\right), -1$$

14b i The roots of the equation  $z^7 = -1$  are the same as the roots of the equation  $z^7 + 1 = 0$ . Since there is no coefficient of  $z^6$ , it follows that the sum of the roots of the equation is equal to zero. Hence

$$\operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) + (-1) = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{7}\right) + \left(\cos\frac{\pi}{7} - i\sin\frac{\pi}{7}\right) + \left(\cos\frac{3\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) + \left(\cos\frac{3\pi}{7} - i\sin\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \\ + \left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) + \left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{7} - i\sin\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) + (-1) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$2\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + 2\cos\frac{3\pi}{7} + 2\cos\frac{5\pi}{7} - 1 = 0$$

$$2\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + 2\cos\frac{3\pi}{7} + 2\cos\frac{5\pi}{7} = 1$$

$$\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + \cos\frac{3\pi}{7} + \cos\frac{5\pi}{7} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14b ii Writing  $z^7 + 1$  as a product of factors (using part a) gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 & z^7 + 1 \\
 &= (z - (-1)) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{7}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) \right) \left( z - \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - z \left( \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{7}\right) \right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right) \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{7}\right) \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - z \left( \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{7}\right) \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - z \left( \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) \right) + \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{5\pi}{7}\right) \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + \operatorname{cis}(0) \right) \\
 &\quad \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + \operatorname{cis}(0) \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + \operatorname{cis}(0) \right) \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

14b iii  $(z + 1)(z^6 - 7^5 + z^4 - z^3 + z^2 - z + 1)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= z^7 - 7^6 + z^5 - z^4 + z^3 - z^2 + z + z^6 - 7^5 + z^4 - z^3 + z^2 - z + 1 \\
 &= z^7 + 1
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(z + 1)(z^6 - 7^5 + z^4 - z^3 + z^2 - z + 1) \\
 &= z^7 + 1 \\
 &= (z + 1) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 &z^6 - z^5 + z^4 - z^3 + z^2 - z + 1 \\
 &= \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + 1 \right) \left( z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

14c Dividing both sides of the identity in part b iii by  $z^3$  gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 & z^3 - z^2 + z - 1 + z^{-1} - z^{-2} + z^{-3} \\
 &= \frac{(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + 1)}{z} \frac{(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + 1)}{z} \frac{(z^2 - 2z \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + 1)}{z} \\
 &= (z^3 + z^{-3}) - (z^2 + z^{-2}) + (z + z^{-1}) - 1 \\
 &= (z - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + z^{-1})(z - 2 \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} + z^{-1})(z - 2 \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} + z^{-1}) \\
 &= \left( (z + z^{-1}) - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{7} \right) \left( (z + z^{-1}) - 2 \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} \right) \left( (z + z^{-1}) - 2 \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

We have already seen that  $z^n + z^{-n} = 2 \cos n\theta$  and so we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 2 \cos 3\theta - 2 \cos 2\theta + 2 \cos \theta - 1 \\
 &= \left( 2 \cos \theta - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{7} \right) \left( 2 \cos \theta - 2 \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} \right) \left( 2 \cos \theta - 2 \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} \right) \\
 &= 8 \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{\pi}{7} \right) \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} \right) \left( \cos \theta - \cos \frac{5\pi}{7} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

15a Let  $z = re^{i\theta}$  be a fifth root of unity, so that

$$z^5 = r^5 e^{5i\theta} = 1 = e^{i2\pi n}, \text{ where } n \text{ is an integer}$$

Comparing modulus, we see that  $r = 1$  and comparing argument we see that we must have  $5\theta = 2\pi n$  where  $n$  is an integer. Hence,

$$\theta = \frac{2\pi n}{5}$$

Taking  $n = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2$  we find that the 5 roots of unity are,

$$z = e^0, e^{\pm \frac{i2\pi}{5}}, e^{\pm \frac{i4\pi}{5}}$$

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

15b i  $u + v$

$$= \alpha + \alpha^4 + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3$$

$$= \alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^4$$

Now we can factorise the equation  $z^5 - 1$  as

$$z^5 - 1$$

$$= (z - 1)(z^4 + z^3 + z^2 + z + 1)$$

Then since  $\alpha$  is a root of the equation  $z^5 - 1$ , it follows that

$$(\alpha - 1)(\alpha^4 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^2 + \alpha + 1) = 0$$

and since  $\alpha = e^{\frac{i2\pi}{5}} \neq 1$  it must be the case that,

$$\alpha^4 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^2 + \alpha + 1 = 0$$

or

$$u + v = \alpha^4 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^2 + \alpha = -1$$

Now squaring  $u - v$  gives

$$(u - v)^2$$

$$= u^2 - 2uv + v^2$$

$$= (\alpha + \alpha^4)^2 - 2(\alpha + \alpha^4)(\alpha^2 + \alpha^3) + (\alpha^2 + \alpha^3)^2$$

$$= (\alpha^2 + 2\alpha^5 + \alpha^8) - 2(\alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha^6 + \alpha^7) + (\alpha^4 + 2\alpha^5 + \alpha^6)$$

$$= (\alpha^2 + 2 + \alpha^3) - 2(\alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha + \alpha^2) + (\alpha^4 + 2 + \alpha) \text{ (Noting that } \alpha^5 = 1)$$

$$= 4 - (\alpha^3 + \alpha^4 + \alpha + \alpha^2)$$

$$= 4 - (-1) \text{ (from the working above } \alpha^4 + \alpha^3 + \alpha^2 + \alpha = -1)$$

$$= 5$$

Hence, taking the square root we must have,

$$u - v = \pm\sqrt{5}$$

Now,

$$\alpha^4 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right) = \text{cis}\left(2\pi - \frac{8\pi}{5}\right) = \text{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) = \alpha^{-1}$$

and

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

$$\alpha^3 = \operatorname{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right) = \operatorname{cis}\left(2\pi - \frac{6\pi}{5}\right) = \operatorname{cis}\left(-\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) = \alpha^{-2}$$

Hence, using the fact that  $z^n + z^{-n} = 2 \cos n\theta$  we have that,

$$u = \alpha + \alpha^4 = \alpha + \alpha^{-1} = 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}$$

and

$$v = \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 = \alpha^2 + \alpha^{-2} = 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5}$$

Thus, we see that  $u = 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} > 0$  and  $v = 2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} < 0$ . So we see that both  $u = 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} > 0$  and  $-v = -2 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} > 0$ , and as such conclude that  $u - v > 0$ . Thus, we can omit the negative sign and have,

$$u - v = \sqrt{5}$$

15b ii Using part i we have,

$$2u = u + v + u - v = -1 + \sqrt{5}$$

Thus,

$$u = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$$

Now, we also have from the working in part i that,  $u = 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5}$ . Thus, we see that

$$u = 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$$

or that

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$

16a  $z^n + z^{-n}$

$$= (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^n + (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^{-n}$$

$$= \operatorname{cis} n\theta + \operatorname{cis}(-n\theta)$$

$$= \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta + \cos n\theta - i \sin n\theta$$

$$= 2 \cos n\theta$$



Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

16b  $\sin(A + B) - \sin(A - B)$

$$= \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B - (\sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B)$$

$$= 2 \cos A \sin B$$

16c  $(z^{2n} + z^{2n-2} + z^{2n-4} + \dots + z^{-2n}) \sin \theta$

$$= ((z^{2n} + z^{-2n}) + (z^{2n-2} + z^{-2n+2}) + \dots + (z^2 + z^{-2}) + z^0) \sin \theta$$

$$= (2 \cos 2n\theta + 2 \cos(2n-2)\theta + \dots + \cos 0) \sin \theta$$

$$= 2 \cos 2n\theta \sin \theta + 2 \cos(2n-2)\theta \sin \theta + \dots + \cos 0 \sin \theta$$

$$= (\sin(2n\theta + \theta) - \sin(2n\theta - \theta)) + (\sin(2(n-1)\theta + \theta) - \sin(2(n-1)\theta - \theta))$$

$$+ \dots + \sin \theta$$

$$= (\sin(2n\theta + \theta) - \sin(2n\theta - \theta)) + (\sin(2n\theta - \theta) - \sin(2n\theta - 2\theta))$$

$$+ \dots (\sin 2\theta - \sin \theta) + \sin \theta$$

$$= \sin(2n\theta + \theta)$$

$$= \sin(2n+1)\theta$$

16d Using the result in part c with  $n = 3$

$$(z^6 + z^4 + z^2 + z^0 + z^{-2} + z^{-4} + z^{-6}) \sin \theta = \sin 7\theta$$

$$z^6 + z^4 + z^2 + z^0 + z^{-2} + z^{-4} + z^{-6} = \frac{\sin 7\theta}{\sin \theta}$$

$$(z^6 + z^{-6}) + (z^4 + z^{-4}) + (z^2 + z^{-2}) + 1 = \frac{\sin 7\theta}{\sin \theta}$$

$$2 \cos 6\theta + 2 \cos 4\theta + 2 \cos 2\theta + 1 = \frac{\sin 7\theta}{\sin \theta}$$

$$2(4 \cos^3 2\theta - 3 \cos 2\theta) + 2(2 \cos^2 2\theta - 1) + 2 \cos 2\theta + 1 = \frac{\sin 7\theta}{\sin \theta}$$

$$8 \cos^3 2\theta + 4 \cos^2 2\theta - 4 \cos 2\theta - 1 = \frac{\sin 7\theta}{\sin \theta}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

17  $\sin \alpha - \sin \beta$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\alpha} - e^{-i\alpha}) - \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\beta} - e^{-i\beta}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\alpha} - e^{i\beta} + e^{-i\beta} - e^{-i\alpha}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}\left(e^{i\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right)}\right)\left(e^{i\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)} - e^{-i\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)}\right) \\ &= 2\left(\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{i\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right)}\right)\right]\left[\frac{1}{2i}\left(e^{i\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)} - e^{-i\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right)}\right)\right]\right) \\ &= 2 \cos\left(\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

18a  $(1 + 2\omega + 3\omega^2 + 4\omega^3 + \dots + n\omega^{n-1})(\omega - 1)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \omega - 1 + 2\omega^2 - 2\omega + 3\omega^3 - 3\omega^2 + 4\omega^4 - 4\omega^3 + \dots + n\omega^n - n\omega^{n-1} \\ &= -1 - \omega - \omega^2 - \omega^3 - \dots - \omega^{n-1} + n\omega^n \\ &= -(1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \dots + \omega^{n-1}) + n\omega^n \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\omega$  is an  $n$ th root of unity,  $\omega^n = 1$  and  $1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \dots + \omega^{n-1} = 0$ . This follows from the definition and the fact that we can factorise.

$$\omega^n - 1 = (\omega - 1)(1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \dots + \omega^{n-1}) = 0$$

and since  $\omega \neq 0$ , we must have that  $1 + \omega + \omega^2 + \dots + \omega^{n-1} = 0$ . Using these results, we find that,

$$\begin{aligned} &(1 + 2\omega + 3\omega^2 + 4\omega^3 + \dots + n\omega^{n-1})(\omega - 1) \\ &= -0 + n(1) \\ &= n \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18b

$$\frac{1}{z^2 - 1} = \frac{z^{-1}}{z - z^{-1}}$$

Let  $z = \text{cis } \theta$  then we have using above

$$\frac{1}{(\text{cis } \theta)^2 - 1} = \frac{(\text{cis } \theta)^{-1}}{\text{cis } \theta - (\text{cis } \theta)^{-1}}$$

$$\frac{1}{\text{cis } 2\theta - 1} = \frac{\text{cis}(-\theta)}{\text{cis } \theta - \text{cis}(-\theta)}$$

$$\frac{1}{\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta - 1} = \frac{\cos \theta - i \sin \theta}{\cos \theta + i \sin \theta - (\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)}$$

$$\frac{1}{\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta - 1} = \frac{\cos \theta - i \sin \theta}{2i \sin \theta}$$

18c Considering the above equation, let  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{n}$ . It follows that

$$\frac{1}{\cos \frac{2\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} - 1} = \frac{\cos \frac{\pi}{n} - i \sin \frac{\pi}{n}}{2i \sin \frac{\pi}{n}}$$

Using the definition of  $\omega$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{\omega - 1} \\ &= \frac{\cos \frac{\pi}{n}}{2i \sin \frac{\pi}{n}} - \frac{i \sin \frac{\pi}{n}}{2i \sin \frac{\pi}{n}} \\ &= -i \frac{\cos \frac{\pi}{n}}{2 \sin \frac{\pi}{n}} - \frac{\sin \frac{\pi}{n}}{2 \sin \frac{\pi}{n}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} - i \frac{\cos \frac{\pi}{n}}{2 \sin \frac{\pi}{n}} \end{aligned}$$

Hence the real part of  $\frac{1}{\omega - 1}$  is  $-\frac{1}{2}$ .

### Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

18d Now, to begin let  $n = 5$ , then we have that  $\omega = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$ , and we see that

$$\omega^5 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)^5 = \text{cis}(2\pi) = 1$$

Hence,  $\omega$  is a fifth root of unity. Then we can apply the result of part a and write.

$$(1 + 2\omega + 3\omega^2 + 4\omega^3 + 5\omega^4)(\omega - 1) = 5$$

Since,  $\omega \neq 1$  we can divide the above expression by  $(\omega - 1)$  and get,

$$1 + 2\omega + 3\omega^2 + 4\omega^3 + 5\omega^4 = \frac{5}{\omega - 1}$$

Subbing in  $\omega$  we have,

$$\frac{5}{\omega - 1} = 1 + 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)^2 + 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)^3 + 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)^4$$

$$\frac{5}{\omega - 1} = 1 + 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right) + 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right)$$

Now, taking the real part of both sides of the equation, recalling that  $\text{Re}(\text{cis}\theta) = \cos\theta$ , we have for the RHS

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Re}\left(1 + 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) + 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) + 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right) + 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right)\right) \\ &= \text{Re}(1) + \text{Re}\left(2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \text{Re}\left(3\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \text{Re}\left(4\text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right)\right) + \text{Re}\left(5\text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right)\right) \\ &= 1 + 2\text{Re}\left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)\right) + 3\text{Re}\left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)\right) + 4\text{Re}\left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right)\right) + 5\text{Re}\left(\text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right)\right) \\ &= 1 + 2\cos\frac{2\pi}{5} + 3\cos\frac{4\pi}{5} + 4\cos\frac{6\pi}{5} + 5\cos\frac{8\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$$

Now, for the LHS using the result of part c, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Re}\left(\frac{5}{\omega - 1}\right) \\ &= 5\text{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\omega - 1}\right) \\ &= 5\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) \\ &= -\frac{5}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Chapter 3 worked solutions – Complex numbers II: de Moivre and Euler

Hence, equating the real parts of the RHS and LHS of the equation we see that,

$$1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + 3 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + 4 \cos \frac{6\pi}{5} + 5 \cos \frac{8\pi}{5} = -\frac{5}{2}$$

18e Now using the result from part d, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + 3 \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + 4 \cos \frac{6\pi}{5} + 5 \cos \frac{8\pi}{5} \\ &= 1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - 3 \cos \left( \pi - \frac{4\pi}{5} \right) - 4 \cos \left( \pi - \frac{6\pi}{5} \right) + 5 \cos \left( \frac{8\pi}{5} - 2\pi \right) \\ &= 1 + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - 3 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - 4 \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right) + 5 \cos \left( \frac{2\pi}{5} \right) \\ &= 1 + 7 \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} - 7 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} \\ &= 1 + 7 \left( 2 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{5} - 1 \right) - 7 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} \quad (\text{Using the double angle identity}) \\ &= 14 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{5} - 7 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - 6 \\ &= -\frac{5}{2} \quad (\text{from part d}) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$14 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{5} - 7 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - 6 = -\frac{5}{2}, \text{ or}$$

$$4 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{5} - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{5} - 1 = 0$$

Solving this quadratic equation gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \cos \frac{\pi}{5} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 - 4(4)(-1)}}{8} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{20}}{8} \\ &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{and since } \cos \frac{\pi}{5} > 0, \text{ we can conclude that } \cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$$